



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b> <b>A61K 39/395, C07H 21/04, C07K 16/00, 16/18, 16/28, C12N 5/10, 15/13, C12P 21/08</b>	<b>A1</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 99/12566</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 18 March 1999 (18.03.99)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US98/18163 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 8 September 1998 (08.09.98) <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> 08/925,339 8 September 1997 (08.09.97) US <b>(71) Applicant:</b> IDEC PHARMACEUTICALS CORPORATION [US/US]; 11011 Torreyana Road, San Diego, CA 92121 (US). <b>(72) Inventors:</b> BLACK, Amelia; 2251 1/2 Oxford Avenue, Cardiff, CA 92007 (US). HANNA, Nabil; 3255 Fortuna Ranch Road, Olivenhian, CA 92024 (US). PADLAN, Eduardo, A.; 4006 Simms Drive, Kinsington, MD 20895 (US). NEWMAN, Roland, A.; 4311 Robbins Street, San Diego, CA 92122 (US). <b>(74) Agents:</b> GESS, E., Joseph et al.; Burns, Doane, Swecker & Mathis L.L.P., P.O. Box 1404, Alexandria, VA 22313-1404 (US).		<b>(81) Designated States:</b> AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i>
<b>(54) Title:</b> HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES TO HUMAN gp39, COMPOSITIONS CONTAINING AND THERAPEUTIC USE THEREOF <b>(57) Abstract</b> <p>The present invention is directed to humanized antibodies which bind human gp39 and their use as therapeutic agents. These humanized antibodies are especially useful for treatment of autoimmune diseases; and an immunosuppressant during transplantation of heterologous cells, tissues or organs, cell therapy, and gene therapy.</p>		

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon		Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

## HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES TO HUMAN gp39, COMPOSITIONS CONTAINING AND THERAPEUTIC USE THEREOF

**FIELD OF THE INVENTION**

The present invention is directed to humanized antibodies specific for human gp39, DNA encoding such antibodies, methods for their production, pharmaceutical compositions containing, and the use of such humanized antibodies as therapeutic agents. These antibodies have particular application in the treatment of autoimmune diseases including, e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, diabetes, and systemic lupus erythematosus as well as non-autoimmune diseases including, e.g., graft-versus-host disease and for preventing graft rejection.

**BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION**

The immune system is capable of producing two types of antigen-specific responses to foreign antigens. Cell-mediated immunity is the term used to refer to effector functions of the immune system mediated by T lymphocytes. Humoral immunity is the term used to refer to production of antigen-specific antibodies by B lymphocytes. It has long been appreciated that the development of humoral immunity against most antigens requires not only antibody-producing B lymphocytes but also the involvement of helper T (hereinafter Th) lymphocytes. (Mitchison, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 1:18-25 (1971); Claman and Chaperon, *Transplant Rev.*, 1:92-119 (1969); Katz et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 70:2624-2629 (1973); Reff et al, *Nature*, 226:1257-1260 (1970)). Certain signals, or "help", are provided by Th cells in response to stimulation by Thymus-dependent (hereinafter TD) antigens. While some B lymphocyte help is mediated by soluble molecules released by Th cells (for instance

- 2 -

lymphokines such as IL-4 and IL-5), activation of B cells also requires a contact-dependent interaction between B cells and Th cells. (Hirohata et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:3736-3744 (1988); Bartlett et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1745-1765 (1989)). This indicates that B cell activation involves an obligatory interaction between cell surface molecules on B cells and Th cells. Such an interaction is further supported by the observation that isolated plasma membranes of activated T cells can provide helper functions necessary for B cell activation. (Brian, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 85:564-568 (1988); Hodgkin et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145:2025-2034 (1990); Noelle et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:1118-1124 (1991)).

It is further known that in a contact-dependent process termed "T cell helper function", CD4<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes direct the activation and differentiation of B lymphocytes and thereby regulate the humoral immune response by modulating the specificity, secretion and isotype-encoded functions of antibody molecules (Mitchell et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 128:821 (1968); Mitchison, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 1:68 (1971); White et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 14:664 (1978); Reinherz et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 74:4061 (1979); Janeway et al, *Immunol. Rev.*, 101:39 (1988); O'Brien et al, *J. Immunol.*, 141:3335 (1988); Rahemtulla et al, *Nature*, 353:180 (1991); and Grusby et al, *Science*, 253:1417 (1991)).

The process by which T cells help B cells to differentiate has been divided into two distinct phases; the inductive and effector phases (Vitetta et al, *Adv. Immunol.*,



- 3 -

45:1 (1989); Noelle et al, *Immunol. Today*, 11:361 (1990)). In the inductive phase, resting T cells contact antigen-primed B cells and this association allows clonotypic T cell receptor (TCR)-CD4 complexes to interact with Ia/Ag  
5 complexes on B cells (Janeway et al, *Immunol. Rev.*, 101:39 (1988); Katz et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*, 70:2624 (1973); Zinkernagel, *Adv. Exp. Med.*, 66:527 (1976); Sprent, *J. Exp. Med.*, 147:1159 (1978); Sprent, *Immunol. Rev.*, 42:158 (1978); Jones et al, *Nature*, 292:547 (1981); Julius et al,  
10 *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 18:375 (1982); Chestnut et al, *J. Immunol.*, 126:1575 (1981); and Rogozinski et al, *J. Immunol.*, 126:735 (1984)). TCR/CD4 recognition of Ia/Ag results in the formation of stable T-B cognate pairs and bi-directional T and B cell activation (Sanders et al, *J.*  
15 *Immunol.*, 137:2395 (1986); Snow et al, *J. Immunol.*, 130:614 (1983); Krusemeier et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:367 (1988); Noelle et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1807 (1989); Bartlett et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1745 (1989); and Kupfer et al, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.*, 7:309 (1987)). In the effector phase, activated  
20 T cells drive B cell differentiation by secreting lymphokines (Thompson et al, *J. Immunol.*, 134:369 (1985)) and by contact-dependent stimuli (Noelle et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1807 (1989); Clement et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:3736 (1984); Crow et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 164:1760 (1986); Brian,  
25 *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 85:564 (1988); Hirohata et al, *J. Immunol.* 140:3736 (1988); Jover et al, *Clin. Immunol. Immun.*, 53:90 (1989); Whalen et al, *J. Immunol.*, 141:2230 (1988); Pollok et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:1633 (1991); and Bartlett et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1745 (1990)), both of

- 4 -

which are required for T cells to drive small resting B cells to terminally differentiate into Ig secreting cells (Clement et al, *J. Immunol.*, 132:740 (1984); Martinez et al, *Nature*, 290:60 (1981); and Andersson et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 77:1612 (1980)).

Although the inductive phase of T cell help is Ag-dependent and MHC-restricted (Janeway et al, *Immun. Rev.*, 101:34 (1988); Katz et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 10:2624 (1973); Zinkernagle, *Adv. Exp. Med. Biol.*, 66:527 (1976)); the effector phase of T cell helper function can be Ag-independent and MHC-nonrestricted (Clement et al, *J. Immunol.*, 132:740 (1984); Hirohata et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:3736 (1988); Whalen et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1715 (1988)). An additional contrasting feature is that the inductive phase of T cell help often requires CD4 molecules and is inhibited by anti-CD4 mAb (Rogozinski et al, *J. Immunol.*, 126:735 (1984)), whereas helper effector function does not require CD4 molecules (Friedman et al, *Cell Immunol.*, 103:105 (1986)) and is not inhibited by anti-CD4 mAbs (Brian, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 85:564 (1988); Hirohata et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:3736 (1988); Whalen et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1745 (1988); and Tohma et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:2547 (1991)). The non-specific helper effector function is believed to be focused on specific B cell targets by the localized nature of the T-B cell interactions with antigen specific, cognate pairs (Bartlett et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1745 (1989); Kupfer et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 165:1565 (1987) and Poo et al, *Nature*, 332:378 (1988)).

- 5 -

Although terminal B cell differentiation requires both contact- and lymphokine-mediated stimuli from T cells, intermediate stages of B cell differentiation can be induced by activated T cell surfaces in the absence of secreted factors (Crow et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 164:1760 (1986); Brian, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 85:564 (1988); Sekita et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 18:1405 (1988); Hodgkin et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145:2025 (1990); Noelle et al, *FASEB J*, 5:2770 (1991)). These intermediate effects on B cells include induction of surface CD23 expression (Crow et al, *Cell Immunol.*, 121:94 (1989)), enzymes associated with cell cycle progression (Pollok et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:1633 (1991)) and responsiveness to lymphokines (Noelle et al, *FASEB J*, 5:2770 (1989); Pollok et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:1633 (1991)). Recently some of the activation-induced T cell surface molecules that direct B cell activation have been identified. Additionally, functional studies have characterized some features of activation-induced T cell surface molecules that direct B cell activation. First, T cells acquire the ability to stimulate B cells 4-8 h following activation (Bartlett et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145:3956 (1990) and Tohma et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:2544 (1991)). Second, the B cell stimulatory activity associated with the surfaces of activated T cells is preserved on paraformaldehyde fixed cells (Noelle et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1807 (1989); Cros et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 164:1760 (1986); Pollok et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:1633 (1991); Tohma et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:2544 (1991); and Kubota et al, *Immunol.*, 72:40 (1991)) and on purified membrane fragments (Hodgkin et al, *J.*

- 6 -

*Immunol.*, 145:2025 (1990) and Martinez et al, *Nature*, 290:60 (1981)). Third, the B cell stimulatory activity is sensitive to protease treatment (Noelle et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1807 (1989); Sekita et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 18:1405 (1988); and Hodgkin et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145:2025 (1990). Fourth, the process of acquiring these surface active structures following T cell activation is inhibited by cycloheximide (Tohma et al, *J. Immunol.*, 196:2349 (1991) and Hodgkin et al, *J. Immunol.*, 195:2025 (1990)).

10        A cell surface molecule, CD40, has been identified on immature and mature B lymphocytes which, when crosslinked by antibodies, induces B cell proliferation. Valle et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 19:1463-1467 (1989); Gordon et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:1425-1430 (1988); Gruder et al, *J. Immunol.*, 15        142:4144-4152 (1989).

CD40 has been molecularly cloned and characterized (Stamenkovic et al, *EMBO J.*, 8:1403-1410 (1989)).

CD40 is expressed on B cells, interdigitating dendritic cells, macrophages, follicular dendritic cells, and thymic epithelium (Clark, *Tissue Antigens* 36:33 (1990); Alderson et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 178:669 (1993); Galy et al, *J. Immunol.* 142:772 (1992)). Human CD40 is a type I membrane protein of 50 kDa and belongs to the nerve growth factor receptor family (Hollenbaugh et al, *Immunol. Rev.*, 20        138:23 (1994)). Signaling through CD40 in the presence of IL-10 induces IgA, IgM and IgG production, indicating that isotype switching is regulated through these interactions. The interaction between CD40 and its ligand results in a

- 7 -

primed state of the B cell, rendering it receptive to subsequent signals.

Also, a ligand for CD40, gp39 (also called CD40 ligand or CD40L) has recently been molecularly cloned and characterized (Armitage et al, *Nature*, 357:80-82 (1992); Lederman et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 175:1091-1101 (1992); Hollenbaugh et al, *EMBO J.*, 11:4313-4319 (1992)). The gp39 protein is expressed on activated, but not resting, CD4<sup>+</sup> Th cells. Spriggs et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 176:1543-1550 (1992); Lane et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 22:2573-2578 (1992); and Roy et al, *J. Immunol.*, 151:1-14 (1993). Cells transfected with gp39 gene and expressing the gp39 protein on their surface can trigger B cell proliferation and, together with other stimulatory signals, can induce antibody production. Armitage et al, *Nature*, 357:80-82 (1992); and Hollenbaugh et al, *EMBO J.*, 11:4313-4319 (1992). In particular, the ligand for CD40, gp39, has been identified for the mouse (Noelle et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89:6550 (1992); Armitage et al, *Nature*, 357:80 (1992)) and for humans (Hollenbaugh et al, *Embo. J.* 11:4313 (1992); Spriggs et al, *J. Exp. Met.*, 176:1543 (1992)). gp39 is a type II membrane protein and is part of a new gene super family which includes TNF- $\alpha$ , TNF- $\beta$  and the ligands for FAS, CD27, CD30 and 4-1BB.

Expression of gp39 can be readily induced in vitro on CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells using either anti-CD3 antibody or phorbol myristate acetate (PMA) plus ionomycin. Expression is rapid and transient, peaking at 6-8 hours and returning to near resting levels between 24 and 48 hours (Roy et al, *J.*

- 8 -

*Immunol.*, 151:2497 (1993)). *In vivo*, gp39 has been reported in humans to be present on CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells in the mantle and centrocytic zones of lymphoid follicles and the periarteriolar lymphocyte sheath of the spleen, in association with  
5 CD40<sup>+</sup> B cells (Lederman et al, *J. Immunol.*, 149:3807 (1992)). gp39<sup>+</sup> T cells produce IL-2, IL-4 and IFN- $\gamma$  (Van der Eetwegh et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 178:1555 (1993)).

Unique insights into the novel role of gp39 in the regulation of humoral immunity have been provided by studies of a human disease, X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome (HIM). HIM is a profound, X-linked immunodeficiency typified by a loss in thymus dependent humoral immunity, the inability to produce IgG, IgA and IgE. Mutations in the gp39 gene were responsible for the expression of a non-functional gp39  
15 protein and the inability of the helper T cells from HIM patients to activate B cells (Allen et al, *Science*, 259:990 (1993); Aruffo et al, *Cell*, 72:291 (1993); DiSanto et al, *Nature*, 361:541 (1993); Korthauer et al, *Nature*, 361:539 (1993)). These studies support the conclusion that early  
20 after T cell receptor engagement of the peptide/MHC class II complex, gp39 is induced on the cognate helper T cell, and the binding of gp39 to CD40 on the B cell induces the B cell to move into the cell cycle and differentiate to immunoglobulin (Ig) secretion and isotype switching.

25 Functional studies have shown that treatment of mice with anti-gp39 completely abolished the antibody response against thymus dependent antigens (SRBC and TNP-KLH), but not thymus independent antigens (TNP-Ficoll) (Foy et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 178:1567 (1993)). In addition, treatment with

- 9 -

anti-gp39 prevented the development of collagen-induced arthritis (CIA) in mice injected with collagen (Durie et al, *Science*, 261:1328 (1993)). Finally, anti-gp39 prevented formation of memory B cells and germinal centers in mouse spleen (Foy et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 180:157 (1994)). Collectively, these data provide extensive evidence that the interaction between gp39 on T cells and CD40 on B cells is essential for antibody responses against thymus dependent antigens.

Recently, a number of murine models of autoimmune disease have been exploited to evaluate the potential therapeutic value of anti-gp39 administration on the development of disease. A brief discussion of the results of studies in these models are provided below:

*Collagen-Induced Arthritis:*

CIA is an animal model for the human autoimmune disease rheumatoid arthritis (RA) (Trenthorn et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 146:857 (1977)). This disease can be induced in many species by the administration of heterologous type II collagen (Courtenay et al, *Nature*, 283:665 (1980); Cathcart et al, *Lab. Invest.*, 54:26 (1986)).

To study the effect anti-gp39 on the induction of CIA (Durie et al, *Science*, 261:1328 (1993)) male DBA1/J mice were injected intradermally with chick type II collagen emulsified in complete Freund's adjuvant at the base of the tail. A subsequent challenge was carried out 21 days later. Mice were then treated with the relevant control antibody or anti-gp39. Groups of mice treated with anti-gp39 showed no titers of anti-collagen antibodies compared

- 10 -

to immunized, untreated control mice. Histological analysis indicated that mice treated with anti-gp39 antibody showed no signs of inflammation or any of the typical pathohistological manifestations of the disease observed in immunized animals. These results indicated that gp39-CD40 interactions are absolutely essential in the induction of CIA. If the initial cognate interaction between the T cell and B cell is not obtained, then the downstream processes, such as autoantibody formation and the resulting inflammatory responses, do not occur.

Recently it has been shown that gp39 is important in activating monocytes to produce TNF- $\alpha$  and IL-6 in the absence of GM-CSF, IL-3 and IFN- $\gamma$  (Alderson et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 178:669 (1993)). TNF- $\alpha$  has been implicated in the CIA disease process (Thorbecke et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 89:7375 (1992) and in RA (DiGiovane et al, *Ann. Rheum. Dis.*, 47:68 (1988); Chu et al, *Arthrit. Rheum.*, 39:1125 (1991); Brennan et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 22:1907 (1992). Thus, inhibition of TNF- $\alpha$  by anti-gp39 may have profound anti-inflammatory effects in the joints of arthritic mice. Both inhibition of TNF- $\alpha$  and of T cell-B cell interactions by anti-gp39 may be contributory to manifestations of CIA. *Experimental Allergic Encephalomyelitis (EAE)*:

EAE is an experimental autoimmune disease of the central nervous system (CNS) (Zamvil et al, *Ann. Rev. Immunol.*, 8:579 (1990) and is a disease model for the human autoimmune condition, multiple sclerosis (MS) (Alvord et al, "Experimental Allergic Model for Multiple Sclerosis," NY 511 (1984)). It is readily induced in mammalian species



- 11 -

by immunizations of myelin basic protein purified from the CNS or an encephalitogenic proteolipid (PLP). SJL/J mice are a susceptible strain of mice (H-2<sup>s</sup>) and, upon induction of EAE, these mice develop an acute paralytic disease and  
5 an acute cellular infiltrate is identifiable within the CNS.

Classen and co-workers (unpublished data) have studied the effects of anti-gp39 on the induction of EAE in SJL/J mice. They found that EAE development was completely  
10 suppressed in the anti-gp39 treated animals. In addition, anti-PLP antibody responses were delayed and reduced compared to those obtained for control animals.

EAE is an example of a cell-mediated autoimmune disease mediated via T cells, with no direct evidence for the  
15 requirement for autoantibodies in disease progression. Interference with the interaction between gp39 and CD40 prevents disease induction and the adoptive transfer of disease.

*Chronic (c) and acute (a) graft-versus-host-disease (GVHD):*

20 Chronic and acute GVHD result from donor cells responding to host disparate MHC alleles. In cGVHD (H-2<sup>d</sup>-->H-2<sup>bd</sup>), heightened polyclonal immunoglobulin production is due to the interaction of allospecific helper T cells and the host B cells. In vivo administration of anti-gp39 antibody  
25 blocked cGVHD-induced serum anti-DNA autoantibodies, IgE production, spontaneous immunoglobulin production in vitro, associated splenomegaly and the ability to transfer disease. Durie F.H. et al, J. Clin. Invest., 94:133 (1994). Antibody production remained inhibited for extended periods

- 12 -

of time after termination of anti-gp39 administration. Anti-allogeneic cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) responses induced in GVHD were also prevented by the *in vivo* administration of anti-gp39. These data suggest that CD40-gp39 interactions are critical in the generation of both forms of GVHD. The fact that CTL responses were inhibited and a brief treatment with anti-gp39 resulted in long-term prevention of disease suggest permanent alterations in the T cell compartment by the co-administration of allogeneic cells and anti-gp39 antibody.

Various research groups have reported the production of murine antibodies specific to gp39, which are disclosed to possess therapeutic utility as immunosuppressants. For example, WO 93/09812, published May 27, 1993, and assigned to Columbia University; EP 0,555,880, published August 18, 1993, and PCT US/94/09872, filed September 2, 1994 by Noelle et al and assigned to Dartmouth College, describe murine antibodies specific to gp39 and their use as therapeutics and immunosuppressants.

Also, Scaria et al, *Gene Therapy*, 4:611-617 (1997) report the use of an antibody to gp39 to inhibit humoral and cellular immune responses to a DNA (adenoviral/vector).

However, while murine antibodies have applicability as therapeutic agents in humans, they are disadvantageous in some respects. Specifically, murine antibodies, because of the fact that they are of foreign species origin, may be immunogenic in humans. This often results in a neutralizing antibody response, which is particularly problematic if the antibodies are desired to be administered repeatedly,

- 13 -

e.g., in treatment of a chronic or recurrent disease condition. Also, because they contain murine constant domains they may not exhibit human effector functions.

In an effort to eliminate or reduce such problems,  
5 chimeric antibodies have been disclosed. Chimeric antibodies contain portions of two different antibodies, typically of two different species. Generally, such antibodies contain human constant and another species, typically murine variable regions. For example, some mouse/human  
10 chimeric antibodies have been reported which exhibit binding characteristics of the parental mouse antibody, and effector functions associated with the human constant region. See, e.g., Cabilly et al, U.S. Patent 4,816,567; Shoemaker et al., U.S. Patent 4,978,745; Beavers et al.,  
15 U.S. Patent 4,975,369; and Boss et al., U.S. Patent 4,816,397, all of which are incorporated by reference herein. Generally, these chimeric antibodies are constructed by preparing a genomic gene library from DNA extracted from pre-existing murine hybridomas (Nishimura  
20 et al, *Cancer Research*, 47:999 (1987)). The library is then screened for variable region genes from both heavy and light chains exhibiting the correct antibody fragment rearrangement patterns. Alternatively, cDNA libraries are prepared from RNA extracted from the hybridomas and  
25 screened, or the variable regions are obtained by polymerase chain reaction. The cloned variable region genes are then ligated into an expression vector containing cloned cassettes of the appropriate heavy or light chain human constant region gene. The chimeric genes are then

- 14 -

expressed in a cell line of choice, usually a murine myeloma line. Such chimeric antibodies have been used in human therapy.

In a commonly assigned application, Serial No. 07/912,292, "Primatized"<sup>TM</sup> antibodies are disclosed which contain human constant and Old World monkey variable regions. These Primatized<sup>TM</sup> antibodies are well tolerated in humans given their low or weak immunogenicity.

Also, humanized antibodies are known in the art. Ideally, "humanization" results in an antibody that is less immunogenic, with complete retention of the antigen-binding properties of the original molecule. In order to retain all the antigen-binding properties of the original antibody, the structure of its combining-site has to be faithfully reproduced in the "humanized" version. This can potentially be achieved by transplanting the combining site of the nonhuman antibody onto a human framework, either (a) by grafting the entire nonhuman variable domains onto human constant regions to generate a chimeric antibody (Morrison et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 81:6801 (1984); Morrison and Oi, *Adv. Immunol.*, 44:65 (1988) (which preserves the ligand-binding properties, but which also retains the immunogenicity of the nonhuman variable domains); (b) by grafting only the nonhuman CDRs onto human framework and constant regions with or without retention of critical framework residues (Jones et al, *Nature*, 321:522 (1986); Verhoeyen et al, *Science*, 239:1539 (1988)); or (c) by transplanting the entire nonhuman variable domains (to preserve ligand-binding properties) but also "cloaking"

- 15 -

them with a human-like surface through judicious replacement of exposed residues (to reduce antigenicity) (Padlan, *Molec. Immunol.*, 28:489 (1991)).

Essentially, humanization by CDR grafting involves  
5 transplanting only the CDRs onto human framework and constant regions. Theoretically, this should substantially eliminate immunogenicity (except if allotypic or idiotypic differences exist). However, it has been reported that some framework residues of the original  
10 antibody also need to be preserved (Riechmann et al, *Nature*, 332:323 (1988); Queen et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 86:10,029 (1989)).

The framework residues which need to be preserved can be identified by computer modeling. Alternatively, critical  
15 framework residues may potentially be identified by comparing known antibody combining site structures (Padlan, *Molec. Immun.*, 31(3):169-217 (1994)).

The residues which potentially affect antigen binding fall into several groups. The first group comprises residues  
20 that are contiguous with the combining site surface which could therefore make direct contact with antigens. They include the amino-terminal residues and those adjacent to the CDRs. The second group includes residues that could alter the structure or relative alignment of the CDRs  
25 either by contacting the CDRs or the opposite chains. The third group comprises amino acids with buried side chains that could influence the structural integrity of the variable domains. The residues in these groups are usually found in the same positions (Padlan, 1994 (*Id.*) according

- 16 -

to the adopted numbering system (see Kabat et al, "Sequences of proteins of immunological interest, 5th ed., Pub. No. 91-3242, U.S. Dept. Health & Human Services, NIH, Bethesda, MD, 1991).

5           However, while humanized antibodies are desirable because of their potential low immunogenicity in humans, their production is unpredictable. For example, sequence modification of antibodies may result in substantial or even total loss of antigen binding function, or loss of  
10 binding specificity. Alternatively, "humanized antibodies" may still exhibit immunogenicity in humans, irrespective of sequence modification.

          Thus, there still exists a significant need in the art for novel humanized antibodies to desired antigens. More  
15 specifically, there exists a need in the art for humanized antibodies specific to gp39, because of their potential as immunotherapeutic agents.

#### OBJECTS OF THE INVENTION

          Toward this end, it is an object of the invention to  
20 provide humanized antibodies which are specific to human gp39.

          More specifically, it is an object of the invention to provide humanized antibodies derived from murine antibodies to gp39 and in particular 24-31, a specific murine antibody  
25 which binds to human gp39.

          It is also an object of the invention to provide pharmaceutical compositions containing humanized antibodies which are specific to human gp39.

- 17 -

It is a more specific object of the invention to provide pharmaceutical compositions containing humanized antibodies derived from 24-31, a murine antibody which specifically binds to human gp39.

5           It is another specific object of the invention to provide methods of using humanized antibodies to human gp39 for treatment of human disease conditions, which are treatable by modulation of gp39 expression and/or inhibition of the gp39/CD40 binding interaction including, e.g., autoimmune diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), diabetes and non-autoimmune conditions such as graft-versus-host disease and transplantation.

15           It is still another object of the invention to provide nucleic acid sequences which encode for humanized antibodies to human gp39.

20           It is a more specific object of the invention to provide nucleic acid sequences which encode humanized antibodies derived from 24-31, a murine antibody which specifically binds to human gp39 antigen.

25           It is another object of the invention to provide vectors which provide for the expression of humanized antibodies to human gp39, in particular humanized antibodies derived from 24-31, a murine antibody which specifically binds to human gp39 antigen.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

In its broadest embodiment, the present invention is directed to humanized antibodies which retain not less than about one-tenth and more preferably not lower than

- 18 -

one-third the gp39 antigen binding affinity of the murine 24-31 antibody and/or which retain not less than about one-tenth and more preferably not less than about one-third the *in vitro* functional activity of the murine antibody 24-31, e.g., in B-cell assays which measure T-cell dependent antibody production. More particularly, the present humanized antibodies retain at least one-tenth and more preferably at least about one-third the half-maximal potency in *in vitro* functional activity in a B cell assay at a concentration of not more than three times the concentration of the 24-31 antibody.

The present invention is further directed to humanized antibodies which bind to the same epitope as the murine 24-31 antibody and/or which are capable of competing with the murine 24-31 antibody for inhibiting the binding of CD40 to gp39 and/or which contain the CDR's of the 24-31 antibody.

The present invention is more preferably directed to humanized antibodies derived from murine 24-31 which possess the humanized variable light sequences and/or humanized variable heavy sequences set forth below:

- (1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK



- 19 -

and a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the following group:

- (1) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- 5 (2) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- (3) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNQFSLNLNSVTRADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- 10 (4) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCAVYGSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYLLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS

as well as variants and equivalents thereof. Variants and equivalents thereof in the present invention are intended to embrace humanized immunoglobulin sequences wherein one or several of the amino acid residues in the above identified humanized variable heavy and/or variable light sequences are modified by substitution, addition and/or deletion in such manner that does not substantially effect gp39 antigen binding affinity. In particular, the present invention embraces variants and equivalents which contain conservative substitution mutations, i.e., the substitution of one or more amino acids by similar amino acids. For example, conservative substitution refers to the substitution of an amino acid within the same general class, e.g., an acidic amino acid, or a basic amino acid, a neutral amino acid by another amino acid within the same class.

- 20 -

What is intended by a conservative amino acid substitution is well known in the art. Preferably, such variants and equivalents will retain not less than about one-tenth and more preferably not less than about one-third the gp39 antigen binding affinity as the parent murine 24-31 antibody and more preferably not less than about one-third the gp39 antigen binding affinity as the murine 24-31 antibody. Additionally, such variants and equivalents will preferably retain not lower than one-tenth and more preferably retain at least about one-third the *in vitro* functional activity of murine antibody 24-31, e.g., in B-cell assays which measure T-cell dependent antibody production. More preferably, these variants and equivalents will retain at least about one-third the *in vitro* functional activity of murine antibody 24-31, for example, in B-cell assays which measure T-cell dependent antibody production. More specifically, these antibodies will retain the half-maximal potency in *in vitro* functional activity in a B cell assay at a concentration of not more than about three times the concentration of the parent 24-31 antibody.

The present invention is further directed to nucleic acid sequences which encode for the expression of such humanized antibodies, as well as expression vectors which provide for the production of humanized antibodies in recombinant host cells. In the most preferred embodiments these DNA sequences will encode for the humanized variable heavy and/or humanized variable light sequences set forth below:

- 21 -

- (1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- 5 (3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK

and a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the  
10 following group:

- (1) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- (2) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- 15 (3) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNNQFSLNLNSVTRADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- (4) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSSETLSLTCAVYGSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS.

20 Moreover, the present invention also embraces equivalent and variants thereof as defined *supra*.

The present invention is further directed to the use of the above-identified humanized antibodies specific to

- 22 -

gp39 as pharmaceuticals. The present invention is also directed to the use of the subject humanized anti-gp39 antibodies for treating diseases treatable by modulation of gp39 expression or by inhibition of the gp39/CD40 interaction. The present invention is more particularly directed to the use of humanized antibodies of the above-identified humanized antibodies specific to gp39 for the treatment of autoimmune disorders, for example, rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, diabetes, systemic lupus erythematosus and ITP. The present invention is further directed to the use of the subject humanized antibodies to gp39 for the treatment of non-autoimmune disorders including graft-versus-host disease and for inhibiting graft rejection.

Also, the subject invention is further directed to usage of the subject humanized antibodies as immunosuppressants, in particular during gene or cellular therapy. The subject humanized antibodies should enhance the efficacy of gene therapy or cellular therapy by inhibiting adverse immunogenic reaction to vectors and cells used therein. For example, they may be used to inhibit humoral and cellular immune responses against viral vectors, e.g., retroviral vectors, adenoviral vectors. Also, the use of such antibodies should enable such cells or vectors to be administered repeatedly, which will facilitate treatment of chronic diseases such as cancers and autoimmune diseases.

#### **BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES**

**Figure 1** depicts the IDEC expression vector N5KG1 used to express humanized and chimeric antibodies derived from 24-31.

- 23 -

Figure 2a contains results of a B cell proliferation assay which contacts human PBLs with soluble gp39-CD8, recombinant human IL-4 and the murine 24-31 antibody or control murine IgG1 monoclonal antibody which demonstrate  
5 that 24-31 antibody inhibits B cell proliferation induced by gp39.

Figure 2B contains results of B cell differentiation assay using mitomycin treated T cells activated with immobilized anti-CD3 cultured in the present of IGD<sup>+</sup> B cells and  
10 different concentrations of the 24-31 antibody which demonstrate that 24-31 antibody inhibits T-cell dependent polyclonal antibody production by human B cells.

Figure 3 contains FACS of non-transfected CHO cells and a gp39 transfectant.

15 Figure 4 contains the amino acid sequence and DNA sequence corresponding to a preferred humanized variable light sequence (including the complementarity determining regions) referred to as VL#1 or preferred humanized variable light sequence (1).

20 Figure 5 contains the amino acid and DNA sequence corresponding to a preferred humanized variable ligand sequence (including the complementarity determining regions) referred to as VL#2 or preferred humanized variable light sequence (2).

25 Figure 6 contains the amino acid and DNA sequence corresponding to a preferred humanized variable heavy sequence (including the complementarity determining regions) referred to as VH#1 of preferred humanized variable heavy sequence (1).

- 24 -

Figure 7 contains the amino acid and DNA sequence of the variable light sequence of 24-31 (non-humanized).

Figure 8 contains the amino acid and DNA sequence of the variable heavy sequence of 24-31 (non-humanized).

5        Figure 9 compares binding of murine 24-31, chimeric 24-31 and a humanized 24-31 antibody to gp39 expressing CHO cells.

10       Figure 10 contains results of a competition assay comparing the binding of 24-31 (biotin) and humanized, chimeric and 24-31 to gp39 expressing CHO cells.

Figure 11 contains results of an assay which measures effects of murine 24-31 and a humanized 24-31 antibody of the invention on human IgM production by B cells cultured in the presence of mitomycin C treated T cells.

15       Figure 12 contains results of an assay comparing binding of two humanized antibodies of the present invention to gp39 expressing CHO cells.

Figure 13 contains the Scatchard plot for murine 24-31.

20       Figure 14 contains the Scatchard plot for humanized Version 1.

Figure 15 contains the Scatchard plot for humanized Version 2.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

25       Prior to setting forth the invention, definitions of certain terms which are used in this disclosure are set forth below:

Humanized antibody - This will refer to an antibody derived from a non-human antibody, typically murine, that

- 25 -

retains or substantially retains the antigen-binding properties of the parent antibody but which is less immunogenic in humans. This may be achieved by various methods including (a) grafting the entire non-human variable domains onto human constant regions to generate chimeric antibodies, (b) grafting only the non-human CDRs onto human framework and constant regions with or without retention of critical framework residues, or (c) transplanting the entire non-human variable domains, but "cloaking" them with a human-like section by replacement of surface residues. Such methods are disclosed in Jones et al, Morrison et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*, 81:6851-6855 (1984); Morrison and Oi, *Adv. Immunol.*, 44:65-92 (1988); Verhoeyen et al, *Science*, 239:1534-1536 (1988); Padlan, *Molec. Immun.*, 28:489-498 (1991); Padlan, *Molec. Immun.*, 31(3):169-217 (1994), all of which are incorporated by reference.

Complementarity Determining Region, or CDR - The term CDR, as used herein, refers to amino acid sequences which together define the binding affinity and specificity of the natural Fv region of a native immunoglobulin binding site as delineated by Kabat et al (1991).

Framework Region - The term FR, as used herein, refers to amino acid sequences interposed between CDRs. These portions of the antibody serve to hold the CDRs in appropriate orientation (allows for CDRs to bind antigen).

Constant Region - The portion of the antibody molecule which confers effector functions. In the present invention, murine constant regions are substituted by human constant regions. The constant regions of the subject

- 26 -

chimeric or humanized antibodies are derived from human immunoglobulins. The heavy chain constant region can be selected from any of the five isotypes: alpha, delta, epsilon, gamma or mu. Further, heavy chains of various subclasses (such as the IgG subclasses of heavy chains) are responsible for different effector functions and thus, by choosing the desired heavy chain constant region, chimeric antibodies with desired effector function can be produced. Preferred constant regions are gamma 1 (IgG1), gamma 3 (IgG3) and gamma 4 (IgG4). More preferred is an Fc region of the gamma 1 (IgG1) isotype. The light chain constant region can be of the kappa or lambda type, preferably of the kappa type.

Chimeric antibody - This is an antibody containing sequences derived from two different antibodies, which typically are of different species. Most typically chimeric antibodies comprise human and murine antibody fragments, generally human constant and murine variable regions.

Immunogenicity - A measure of the ability of a targeting protein or therapeutic moiety to elicit an immune response (humoral or cellular) when administered to a recipient. The present invention is concerned with the immunogenicity of the subject humanized antibodies or fragments thereof.

Humanized or chimeric antibody of reduced immunogenicity - This refers to an antibody or humanized antibody exhibiting reduced immunogenicity relative to the parent antibody, e.g., the 24-31 antibody.



- 27 -

Humanized antibody substantially retaining the binding properties of the parent antibody - This refers to a humanized or chimeric antibody which retains the ability to specifically bind the antigen recognized by the parent antibody used to produce such humanized or chimeric antibody. Humanized or chimeric antibodies which substantially retain the binding properties of 24-31 will bind to human gp39. Preferably the humanized or chimeric antibody will exhibit the same or substantially the same antigen-binding affinity and avidity as the parent antibody. Ideally, the affinity of the antibody will not be less than 10% of the parent antibody affinity, more preferably not less than about 30%, and most preferably the affinity will not be less than 50% of the parent antibody. Methods for assaying antigen-binding affinity are well known in the art and include half-maximal binding assays, competition assays, and Scatchard analysis. Suitable antigen binding assays are described in this application.

The present invention is directed to novel humanized monoclonal antibodies which bind human gp39 and their use as therapeutic agents. The present invention is further directed toward nucleic acid sequences which encode said humanized antibodies, and their expression in recombinant host cells.

More specifically, the present invention is directed toward humanized antibodies derived from murine antibody 24-31 which specifically binds to human gp39.

Murine antibody 24-31 is a murine antibody raised against human gp39 which functionally inactivates gp39 both

- 28 -

in vitro and in vivo. Therefore, it possesses properties which render it potentially useful for treatment of diseases wherein gp39 inactivation and/or modulation or inhibition of the gp39/CD40 interaction is desirable. In particular, such diseases include autoimmune diseases such as, e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, ITP, diabetes, and systemic lupus erythematosus as well as non-autoimmune diseases such as graft-versus-host disease and graft rejection.

However, while murine antibody 24-31 possesses functional properties which render it potentially suitable as a therapeutic agent, it possesses several potential disadvantages. Namely, because it is of murine origin it potentially will be immunogenic in humans. Also, because it contains murine constant sequences, it will likely not exhibit the full range of human effector functions and will probably be more rapidly cleared if administered to humans. While such disadvantages should not be problematic in the treatment of some disease conditions or persons, they pose substantial concern if the disease treated is of a chronic or recurrent nature. Examples of recurrent or chronic diseases include, e.g., autoimmune diseases, wherein the host continually or chronically exhibits an autoimmune reaction against self-antigens.

Therefore, in order to alleviate the disadvantages associated with murine antibody 24-31, namely potential immunogenicity in humans and decrease of human effector functions, the present inventors desired to produce improved, humanized derivatives of the murine 24-31 antibody.

- 29 -

While this was the goal of the present invention, the desired result was not of a routine or predictable nature. Humanization of antibodies requires the careful selection of amino acid residues which are to be modified, and the  
5 judicious selection of residues which are to be substituted therefor. This is because modification of antibody variable regions, even those involving a few amino acid residues, may cause substantial deleterious effects on antigen binding. For example, humanized antibodies may exhibit  
10 substantially reduced antigen affinity and/or antigen-specificity in relation to the parent antibody.

As noted *supra*, different methods of humanization of antibodies, including murine antibodies have been reported in the literature. See, e.g., Padlan, *Molec. Immunol.*,  
15 31(3):169-217 (1994); Padlan, *Molec. Immunol.*, 28:484-498 (1991); Morrison and Oi, *Adv. Immunol.*, 44:65-92 (1988), all of which references are incorporated by reference in their entirety herein. These methods include in particular humanization by CDR grafting (Jones et al, *Nature*, 321:522-  
20 525 (1986); Verhoeyen et al, *Science*, 239:1534-1539 (1988); and the more tailored approach of Padlan, *Molec. Immunol.*, 28:489 (1991) and Padlan, *Molec. Immunol.*, 31:169 (1994) which involves the selection of non-essential framework amino acid residues and their modification by appropriate  
25 substitution mutation. These references are incorporated by reference in their entirety herein.

As noted, CDR grafting techniques, while successful in some instances, may substantially adversely affect the affinity of the resultant humanized antibodies. This is

- 30 -

believed to occur because some framework residues affect or are essential for and at least affect antigen binding. Our technique; Padlan (1994) (*Id.*) is more refined because we retain only those murine framework residues which we deem  
5 critical to the preservation of the antibody combining site while keeping the surface properties of the molecule as human as possible. Accordingly, this technique has the potential of producing humanized antibodies which retain the antigen-binding characteristics of the parent antibody.  
10 Because of this, this technique was selected by the present inventors as the means by which humanized antibodies derived from murine antibody 24-31 specific to human gp39 would potentially be obtained.

The cloning of the variable regions of 24-31  
15 (described in detail in the examples *infra*) resulted in the identification of the  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences utilized by the 24-31 antibody respectively shown in **Figure 7** and **Figure 8**. After sequencing, the variable regions were then humanized. As noted, this was effected substantially according to the  
20 method of Padlan (1994) (*Id.*), incorporated by reference *supra*.

This method generally comprises replacement of the non-human framework by human framework residues, while retaining only those framework residues that we deem criti-  
25 cal to the preservation of antigen binding properties. Ideally, this methodology will confer a human-like character on the surface of the xenogeneic antibody thus rendering it less immunogenic while retaining the interior and

- 31 -

contacting residues which affect its antigen-binding properties.

More specifically, the 24-31  $V_K$  and  $V_H$  sequences set forth in **Figures 7 and 8** were humanized by comparison to  
5 human antibodies of reported sequence, which are referred to as "templates."

Specifically, the 24-31  $V_K$  was humanized using as templates:

(a) For VL#1, the human V-Kappa subgroup I sequences,  
10 e.g., DEN and the like, as well as the germline 012 (see Cox et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.* 24:827-836 (1994)), and for VL#2, the human V-Kappa subgroup IV sequences, e.g., LEN. Such template sequences are known and are reported in Kabat et al (1991) (*Id.*) or GenBank.

15 The 24-31  $V_H$  #1 was humanized using as templates

(a) the human  $V_H$  subgroup IV sequence, 58p2 and  
(b) (GenBank Accession No.) Z18320 and the germline 3d75d (S. van der Maarel et al, *J. Immunol.*, 150:2858-2868 (1993)).

20 Such template variable heavy antibody sequences are also known and are reported in Kabat et al, "Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest," 5th Ed., NIH (1991) and in GenBank.

The template human variable heavy and light sequences  
25 were selected based on a number of different criteria, including, in particular, high degree of sequence similarity with 24-31 overall, as well as similarity in the "important" residues, i.e., those which are believed to be comprised in the  $V_L$ : $V_H$  interface; those which are in contact

- 32 -

with the complementarity determining regions, or which are inwardly pointing. Also, the templates were selected so as to potentially preserve the electrostatic charge of the 24-31 F<sub>v</sub> as much as possible, and also so as to preserve  
5 glycines, prolines and other specific amino acid residues which are believed to affect antigen binding.

This methodology resulted in the following preferred humanized V<sub>L</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> heavy sequences derived from the 24-31 antibody which are set forth below in **Table 1** and **Table 2**.  
10 As discussed above, the invention further embraces equivalents and variants of these preferred humanized sequences, e.g., those containing one or more conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantially affect gp39 binding. The complementarity determining regions are identified in **Figures 7** and **8** which contain the entire  
15 variable heavy and light chain CDR sequences of the parent (non-humanized) 24-31 antibody.

TABLE 1

HUMANIZED 24-31 VL SEQUENCES

	10	20	40	60	70	80
24-31	DIVMTQSQKFMSTSVGDRVSITC	KASQNVITAVA	WYQOKPGQSPKLLIY	SASNRYT	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFLTISNMQSED	LADYFC QQYNSYPYT
5	100					
	FGGGTKLEIK					
(1)	DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVTITC	KASQNVITAVA	WYQOKPGKSPKLLIY	SASNRYT	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFLTISLQPED	FADYFC QQYNSYPYT
	FGGGTKLEIK					
(2)	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC	KASQNVITAVA	WYQOKPGQSPKLLIY	SASNRYT	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFLTISLQAED	VADYFC QQYNSYPYT
10	FGGGTKLEIK					
(3)	DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVTITC	KASQNVITAVA	WYQOKPGKSPKLLIY	SASNRT	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFLTISMQPED	FADYFC QQYNSYPYT
	FGGGTKLEIK					
(4)	DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC	KASQNVITAVA	WYQOKPGQSPKLLIY	SASNRYT	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFLTISMQAED	VADYFC QQYNSYPYT
	FGGGTKLEIK					

TABLE 2

HUMANIZED 24-31 VH SEQUENCES

	10	20	30	40	70	82abc	90				
24-31	EVQLQESGPGSLVKPSQTL	SLTCTSVT	GD	SIT	NGFWI	WIRKPPGNKLEYMG	YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS	RISITRDT	TSKNQFYLQLNSVT	TEDTG	TYYYCAC

110

RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS

(1) EVQLQESGPGSLVKPSQTL  
SLTCTSVT  
GD  
SIT  
NGFWI  
WIRKPPGNKLEYMG  
YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDT  
TSKNQFSLKLS  
SVTAADTG  
VYYCAC

RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS

(2) EVQLQESGPGSLVKPSQTL  
SLTCTSVT  
GD  
SIT  
NGFWI  
WIRKPPGNKLEYMG  
YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDT  
TSKNQFSLKLS  
SVTAADTG  
VYYCAC

RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS

(3) EVQLQESGPGSLVKPSQTL  
SLTCAVSGD  
SIT  
NGFWI  
WIRKPPGNKLEYMG  
YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDT  
SNQFSLNLS  
NLSVTRADTG  
VYYCAC

RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS

(4) EVQLQESGPGSLVKPSQTL  
SLTCAVYGD  
SIT  
NGFWI  
WIRKPPGNKLEYMG  
YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDT  
TSKNQFYLKLS  
SVTAADTG  
VYYCAC

RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS



- 35 -

As can be seen therefrom, four preferred humanized framework sequences were designed for both the  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  chains. Therefore, there are 16 different possible humanized 24-31 antibodies which may be synthesized using the  
5 above-identified humanized  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  24-31 sequences, excluding variants and equivalents containing conservative modifications.

Humanized 24-31 antibodies containing these humanized variable heavy and light sequences may be obtained by  
10 recombinant methods. It is expected that humanized sequences which contain any combination of the above preferred humanized variable sequences will result in humanized antibodies which bind human gp39. Moreover, based on these sequences, the order of preference using the numbering set forth in **Table 1** and **Table 2** is expected to be as  
15 follows:

- (1) #1  $V_L$  with #1  $V_H$  (Version 1)
- (2) #2  $V_L$  with #1  $V_H$  (Version 2)
- (3) #1  $V_L$  with #2  $V_H$  (Version 3)
- 20 (4) #2  $V_L$  with #2  $V_H$  (Version 4)

The above-identified humanized  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  sequences may be further modified, e.g., by the introduction of one or more additional substitution modifications and also by the addition of other amino acids. Additional modifications  
25 will be selected which do not adversely affect antigen (gp39) binding. For example, the inventors contemplate further modification of the  $V_H$  chain by substitution of one or more of residues 34, 43, 44 and 68 (according to Kabat numbering scheme) Kabat et al (1991) (*Id.*). Also, the

- 36 -

inventors contemplate modification of residue 85 of the V<sub>L</sub> chain. Based on the structural features of the antibody combining site, it is believed that modification of such residues should also not adversely impact antigen binding.

5 Moreover, it is expected that the introduction of one or more conservative amino acid substitutions should not adversely affect gp39 binding.

So as to better describe the subject humanized 24-31, V<sub>H</sub> and V<sub>L</sub> sequences, the preferred humanized framework  
 10 sequences are also set forth in **Table 3** below, which compares these sequences to the template human variable heavy and light framework sequences, i.e., human DEN VK1, Human 012/V36 germline, human LEN VKIV, human 58p2, human Z18320, and human 3d75d as well as to the unhumanized murine 24-31  
 15 V<sub>H</sub> and V<sub>L</sub> framework sequences.

TABLE 3**VK Framework Region Comparisons - Humanized Anti-gp39**

	FR1	FR2
Human 012/V3b germline	DIQMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITTC	WYQQKPGKAPKLLIY
20 Human DEN VKI	-----T-----	-----E---V---
Murine 24-31	--V---QK-M-T-----S---	-----QS-----
Padlan VL#1 humanized	--V-----	-----S-----
	FR3	FR4
Human 012/V3b	GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFLTISLQPEDFATYYC	
25 Human DEN VKI	-----E-----SD-----	FGQGTKLEIK
Murine 24-31	---D-----NM-SE-L-D-F-	--G-----
Padlan VL#1	---D-----D-F-	--G-----

- 37 -

TABLE 3 (Continued)

	FR1	FR2
Human LEN VKIV	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC	WYQQKPGQPPLLIY
Murine 24-31	-----QKFMST-V-D-VS-T-	-----S-----
5 Padlan VL#2 humanized	-----	-----S-----
	FR3	FR4
Human LEN VKIV	GVPDRFSGSGGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYC	FGQGTKLEIK
Murine 24-31	-----NM-S--L-D-F-	--G-----
Padlan VL#2	-----D-F-	--G-----
10	FR1	
Human 58p2	QVQLQESGPGLVKPSSETLSLTCTVSGGSIS	
Murine 24-31	E-----S---Q-----S-T-D--T	
Padlan VH#1 humanized	E-----D--T	
Human Z18320 GenBank	-----Q-----	
15		
Human 3d75d germline	-----Q-----	
Padlan VH#2 humanized	E-----Q-----D--T	

FR2

FR3

- 38 -

	Human 58p2	WIRQPPGKGLEWIG	RVTISVDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCAR
	Murine 24-31	---KF--NK--YM-	-IS-TR---Q---Y-Q-N---TE--GT----C
	Padlan VH#1	---K---NK--YM-	-IS--R-----G-----C
	Human Z18320	-----A-----	-----
5	Human 3d75d	-----H-----	-----
	Padlan VH#2	---KH--NK--YM-	-IS--R-----G-----C

	Human 58p2	WGQGTMTVTVSS
	Murine 24-31	-----TL----
	Padlan VH#1	-----TL----
10	Human Z18320	-----
	Padlan VH#2	-----TL----

In order to produce humanized antibodies, DNA sequences are synthesized which encode for the afore-identified humanized  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences. As noted, taking into account these four humanized  $V_L$  sequences, and four humanized  $V_H$  sequences, there are 16 potential humanized antigen combining sites which may be synthesized. Also, there are even more potential humanized antigen combining sites taking into account the potential substitution of residues 34, 43, 44 and 68 of the humanized  $V_H$  and residue 85 of the humanized  $V_L$  by other amino acid residues and/or the potential incorporation of conservative substitution mutations. Two of the preferred humanized variable light sequences (1) and (2) and a preferred humanized variable heavy sequence

- 39 -

(1) including the complementarity determining regions and corresponding DNA sequences are set forth in **Figures 4, 5 and 6**, respectively.

Methods for synthesizing DNA encoding for a protein of known sequence are well known in the art. Using such methods, DNA sequences which encode the subject humanized  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences are synthesized, and then expressed in vector systems suitable for expression of recombinant antibodies. This may be effected in any vector system which provides for the subject humanized  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences to be expressed as a fusion protein with human constant domain sequences and associate to produce functional (antigen binding) antibodies.

Expression vectors and host cells suitable for expression of recombinant antibodies and humanized antibodies in particular, are well known in the art.

The following references are representative of methods and vectors suitable for expression of recombinant immunoglobulins which are incorporated by reference herein:

Weidle et al, *Gene*, 51:21-29 (1987); Dorai et al, *J. Immunol.*, 13(12):4232-4241 (1987); De Waele et al, *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 176:287-295 (1988); Colcher et al, *Cancer Res.*, 49:1738-1745 (1989); Wood et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145(a):3011-3016 (1990); Bulens et al, *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 195:235-242 (1991); Beggington et al, *Biol. Technology*, 10:169 (1992); King et al, *Biochem. J.*, 281:317-323 (1992); Page et al, *Biol. Technology*, 9:64 (1991); King et al, *Biochem. J.*, 290:723-729 (1993); Chaudary et al, *Nature*, 339:394-397 (1989); Jones et al, *Nature*, 321:522-525 (1986); Morrison

- 40 -

and Oi, *Adv. Immunol.*, 44:65-92 (1988); Benhar et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 91:12051-12055 (1994); Singer et al, *J. Immunol.*, 150:2844-2857 (1993); Cooto et al, *Hybridoma*, 13(3):215-219 (1994); Queen et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 86:10029-10033 (1989); Caron et al, *Cancer Res.*, 32:6761-6767 (1992); Cotoma et al, *J. Immunol. Meth.*, 152:89-109 (1992). Moreover, vectors suitable for expression of recombinant antibodies are commercially available.

Host cells known to be capable of expressing functional immunoglobulins include by way of example mammalian cells such as Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells, COS cells, myeloma cells, bacteria such as *Escherichia coli*, yeast cells such as *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, among other host cells. Of these, CHO cells are used by many researchers given their ability to effectively express and secrete immunoglobulins.

Essentially, recombinant expression of humanized antibodies are effected by one of two general methods. In the first method, the host cells are transfected with a single vector which provides for the expression of both heavy and light variable sequences fused to selected constant regions. In the second method, host cells are transfected with two vectors, which respectively provide for expression of either the variable heavy or light sequence fused to selected constant regions.

Human constant domain sequences are well known in the art, and have been reported in the literature. Preferred human  $V_L$  sequences includes the Kappa and lambda constant light sequences. Preferred human heavy constant sequences

- 41 -

include human gamma 1, human gamma 2, human gamma 3, human gamma 4 and mutated versions thereof which provide for altered effect or function, e.g. enhanced *in vivo* half-life and reduced Fc receptor binding.

5 Preferred modifications of the human gamma 4 constant domain include P and/or E modifications, which respectively refer to the change of a leucine to a glutamic acid at position 236 and/or the change of a serine to a proline (Kabat numbering) at position 229 such as described in  
10 commonly assigned Attorney Docket No. 012712-165 filed on September 6, 1995 and incorporated by reference in its entirety herein.

A particularly preferred vector system comprises the expression vectors described in commonly assigned U.S.  
15 Serial No. 08/476,237 filed June 7, 1995, Serial No. 08/397,072, filed January 25, 1995 and 07/912,122 filed July 10, 1992, 07/886,281 filed March 23, 1992, and 07/735,064 filed July 25, 1991, all incorporated by reference in their entirety.

20 In particular, these applications describe vector systems for the production of recombinant antibodies, referred to as TCAE 5.2 and TCAE 6 which comprise the following:

- 1) Four transcriptional cassettes in tandem order:  
25 (a) a human immunoglobulin light chain constant region. In TCAE 5.2 this is the human immunoglobulin Kappa light chain constant region (Kabat numbering amino acids 108-214, allotype Km 3) and in TCAE 6 the human immunoglobulin light chain lambda constant region (Kabat numbering

- 42 -

amino acids 108-215, genotype Oz minus, Mcg minus, Ke minus allotype).

(b) a human immunoglobulin heavy chain constant region; in both constructs the human immunoglobulin heavy chain is a gamma/constant region (Kabat numbering amino acids 114-478 allotype Gm1a, Gm12).

(c) DHFR; containing its own eukaryotic promoter and polyadenylation region; and

(d) NEO; also containing its own eukaryotic promoter and polyadenylation region.

2) The human immunoglobulin light and heavy chain cassettes contain synthetic signal sequences for secretion of the immunoglobulin chains; and

3) The human immunoglobulin light and heavy chain cassettes contain specific DNA links which allow for the insertion of light and heavy immunoglobulin variable regions which maintain the translational reading frame and do not alter the amino acids normally found in immunoglobulin chains.

These vectors are preferably utilized in CHO cells. The subject antibodies are preferably expressed in the above-described vector systems.

However, the subject humanized antibody sequences derived from the number 24-31 antibody may be expressed in any vector system which provides for the expression of functional antibodies, i.e., those which bind gp39 antigen.

In particular, the inventors elected to express the subject humanized  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences, as well as the native (unmodified)  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences derived from 24-31 in CHO



- 43 -

cells using the N5KG1 expression vector which contains human Kappa and human gamma 1 constant regions. The N5KG1 expression vector is depicted schematically in **Figure 1**. As hoped, the chimeric antibody derived from 24-31, when  
5 expressed in CHO cells binds gp39 (by demonstrated binding to CHO- gp39 transfectant). Also, several humanized antibodies of the invention derived from 24-31 when expressed using this vector system resulted in functional (gp39 binding) antibodies.

10 The present invention is further described through presentation of the following examples. These examples are offered by way of illustration and not by way of limitation.

#### **EXAMPLE 1**

##### 15 **Selection of 24-31 Antibody for Humanization.**

Accumulating evidence in animal models indicates that anti-gp39 administration prevents a variety of autoimmune processes and interferes with allograft rejection. These results provide compelling evidence that antibodies to  
20 human gp39 may have significant therapeutic value in the management of autoimmune disease and the transplantation of allogeneic tissue and organs in humans. A monoclonal antibody (mAb) specific for human gp39 has been reported (Lederman et al, *J. Immunol.*, 199:3817 (1992)), and its  
25 functional activity in blocking gp39-CD40 interactions *in vitro* has been evaluated. To gain greater insights into the functional impact of anti-gp39 antibodies on the human

- 44 -

immune system, a panel of anti-human gp39 mAbs was generated. From this panel, one mAb appeared superior and was extensively tested for functional inactivation of gp39 *in vitro* and *in vivo*.

5           More specifically, a panel of 6 murine (all IgG1) anti-gp39 antibodies was generated by immunization with a soluble fusion protein of human gp39 (gp39-CD8), followed by challenge with activated human peripheral blood T cells. Flow cytometric analysis of human peripheral blood T cells  
10 demonstrated that the mAbs recognized a cell surface molecule expressed on activated (PMA/ionomycin), but not resting, CD3<sup>+</sup> T cells, and that the pattern of reactivity was similar to that seen with a recombinant CD40 fusion protein (CD40-Ig) (data not shown). Immunoprecipitation of [<sup>35</sup>S]  
15 metabolically labeled activated human peripheral blood T cells revealed that each of the 6 mAbs precipitated a molecule of similar size (33 kDa) to that precipitated by CD40-Ig. Finally, binding of CD40-Ig to gp39 was blocked in the presence of the antibodies indicating recognition of  
20 the same molecule, further confirming their specificity. Although all 6 mAbs were capable of blocking gp39 function, one mAb, 24-31, was selected for extensive analysis.

#### EXAMPLE 2

**T cell-dependent B cell proliferation and**  
25 **differentiation (Ig production) is blocked by anti-gp39.**

A number of studies have provided evidence that signals delivered through CD40 by its ligand, gp39, induce B cell activation, proliferation, differentiation, and isotype switching. To determine if the anti-gp39 24-31 mAb

- 45 -

blocked gp39 function, B cells were cultured with a soluble fusion protein of gp39 (gp39-CD8) in the presence or absence of 24-31, and the B cell proliferative response was assessed by <sup>3</sup>H-thymidine incorporation. The results, shown in **Figure 2A**, demonstrate that gp39-CD8 induced vigorous proliferation of B cells. The presence of anti-gp39 24-31 mAb completely ablated B cell proliferation induced by gp39-CD8 at concentrations as low as 2.5 µg/ml. To determine whether 24-31 interfered with T cell-induced B cell differentiation, B cells were co-cultured with anti-CD3 activated T cells in the presence or absence of 24-31. Polyclonal IgM, IgG, and IgA production was assessed after 12 days. As shown in **Figure 2B**, the addition of 24-31 inhibited polyclonal IgM, IgG, and IgA antibody production (90-99%). These results confirm previous reports establishing the requirement for gp39-CD40 interactions in T cell-dependent B cell differentiation (Nishioka et al, *J. Immunol.*, 153:1027 (1994), and further demonstrate the use of newly characterized anti-human gp39 24-31 mAb in blocking gp39 function.

### EXAMPLE 3

#### **Anti-gp39 blocks in vivo tetanus toxoid specific antibody production in SCID mice reconstituted with human PBL.**

Numerous studies have established that the human immune system can be studied *in vivo* under experimental conditions through the use of severe combined immunodeficiency (*scid*) mice engrafted with human peripheral blood lymphocytes (hu-PBL-*scid* mice) (Mosler et al, *Nature*,

- 46 -

335:256 (1988); McCune et al, *Science*, 241:1632 (1988).

Long-term chimerism is achieved in *scid* mice by injection with human PBL, and antigen-specific secondary antibody responses are detected in hu-PBL-*scid* mice challenged in vivo with antigen (Carlsson et al, *J. Immunol.*, 148:1065 (1992); Duchosal et al, *Cell Immunol.*, 139:468 (1992)).

This system was exploited to evaluate the immunosuppressive effects of *in vivo* anti-gp39 administration on the immune responses elicited by human T and B cells.

10       Experiments, the results of which are contained in **Figure 2B**, demonstrated that blockade of gp39 function by 24-31 inhibited T cell-dependent polyclonal Ig production by human B cells *in vitro*. To determine whether 24-31 could also inhibit antigen specific B cell antibody production in vivo, C.B-17 *scid/scid* mice injected i.p. with human PBL (hu-PBL-*scid*) and immunized with tetanus toxoid (TT) were treated with 24-31 or PBS, and the secondary (IgG) anti-TT antibody response was assessed. Immunization of hu-PBL-*scid* with TT resulted in detectable levels of IgG anti-TT antibody within 14 days post immunization in most animals (**Table 4**). However, treatment with anti-gp39 (24-31; 250 µg/day, twice weekly) completely ablated the secondary anti-TT antibody response in 9/10 mice examined, demonstrating that *in vivo* blockade of gp39 function also resulted in inhibition of antigen specific humoral responses.

15  
20  
25

- 47 -

Recipient Strain*	Treatment†	Anti-Tetanus Antibody (O.D. ± SE)§ (Frequency of Mice Containing Anti-Tetanus Antibody)			
		days post immunization			
		7d	14d	21d	28d
C.B-17	PBS	<0.02 (0/10)	2.30 ± .042	.224 ± .040	.137 ± .007
scid/scid			(7/10)*	(8/10)**	(4/10)
	anti-gp39	.162 (1/10)	<0.02 (0/10)	<0.02 (0/10)	<0.02 (0/10)

**Table 4. Ablation of the secondary anti-tetanus antibody response following engraftment of human PBL in C.B-17 scid/scid mice immunized with tetanus toxoid.\*** Four-six week old C.B-17-scid/scid mice were injected i.p. with  $20 \times 10^6$  human PBL and 0.25 ml tetanus toxoid.

†Anti-gp39 24-31 or PBS (250 µg/injection) was administered i.p. twice weekly throughout the entire experiment.

§The level of human anti-tetanus toxoid antibody in the serum was determined weekly by ELISA. All mice with serum levels of human anti-tetanus toxoid antibody > 0.100 O.D. at a 1:10 dilution were considered positive. Only positive mice were used in the calculation of the mean ± SE values included in the table. The level of human anti-tetanus toxoid in sera from pre-immune mice not immunized with tetanus toxoid was < 0.02 O.D. Data are presented as mean ± SE.

\*Significantly different ( $p=0.222$ ) than the anti-gp39 treated group.

\*\*Significantly different ( $p<0.001$ ) than the anti-gp39 treated group.

#### EXAMPLE 4

**Anti-gp39 treatment does not inhibit the antigen-specific T cell proliferative response of hu-PBL-scid spleen cells.**

To determine whether treatment of hu-PBL-scid mice with anti-gp39 altered the responsiveness of antigen-specific T cells in vivo, the proliferative response of spleen cells from hu-PBL-scid mice immunized with TT and treated with 24-31 was assessed in vitro. Spleen cells from control or anti-gp39 treated hu-PBL-scid mice were cultured with TT or medium alone, and the proliferative response was

- 48 -

assessed by <sup>3</sup>H-thymidine incorporation after 6 days. **Table 5** summarizes the results of one such experiment. Hu-PBL-*scid* mice treated with anti-gp39 responded similarly to *in vitro* stimulation with TT as did hu-PBL-*scid* mice which were untreated (5/10 vs. 3/10 responding mice). Experiments using NOD/LtSz-*scid/scid* mice as recipients yielded similar results, although anti-TT antibodies were undetectable in these mice (data not shown). These data demonstrate that treatment with anti-gp39 does not result in deletion or functional inactivation of antigen-specific T cells in hu-PBL-*scid* mice and support the contention that inhibition of TT specific antibody responses by anti-gp39 is due to blockade of gp39-CD40 interactions and subsequent B cell responses rather than T cell inactivation.

15	Recipient Strain*	Treatment†	Frequency of Responding Mice§
	C.B-17 <i>scid/scid</i>	PBS	3/10
		anti-gp39	5/10
	NOD/LtSz- <i>scid/scid</i>	PBS	5/10
		anti-gp39	6/10

- 49 -

Table 5. Anti-gp39 treatment does not alter the anti-tetanus T cell proliferative response following engraftment of human PBL in C.B-17-*scid/scid* or NOD/LtSz-*scid/scid* mice immunized with tetanus toxoid.

5 \*Four-six week old C.B-17-*scid/scid* or NOD/LtSz-*scid/scid* mice were injected i.p. with  $20 \times 10^6$  human PBL and 0.25 ml tetanus toxoid.

¶Anti-gp39 24-31 or PBS (250  $\mu$ g/injection) was administered i.p. twice weekly throughout the entire experiment.  
10 §Spleen cells from mice injected with human PBL and immunized with tetanus toxoid were cultured at a concentration of  $1 \times 10^5$  cells/ml in the presence of media alone or tetanus toxoid (2.5 or 5.0  $\mu$ g/ml). Proliferation was assessed by  $^3$ H-thymidine incorporation after 6d. Stimula-  
15 tion indices were calculated by the following formula"  
S.I. = cpm tetanus - cpm medium/cpm medium. S.I. of > than 2.0 was considered positive.

#### EXAMPLE 5

#### Generation of a gp39 CHO transfectant cell line.

20 Recently, a CHO transfectant that constitutively expresses cell-surface gp39 was generated to use as a reagent for the humanized anti-gp39 24-31 binding studies proposed in this application. The full-length gp39 gene (Hollenbaugh et al, *Immunol. Rev.*, 138:23 (1994)) was  
25 amplified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) of phytohemag-

- 50 -

glutinin-activated human PBL and cloned into IDEC's INPEP4 vector under the transcriptional control of the cytomegalovirus (CMV) promoter and enhancer elements. A CHO transfectant was established and amplified in 50 nM methotrexate. The transfectant, 50D4, was shown to express cell-surface gp39 by ELISA (data not shown) and FACS analysis (Figure 3).

#### EXAMPLE 6

##### **High-level expression of antibodies using a CHO expression system.**

IDEC's proprietary N5KG1 expression vector is used in CHO cells for expression of the humanized anti-gp39 24-31 antibody. This vector is depicted schematically in Figure 1. High-level expression of recombinant antibodies is consistently obtained in CHO cells using this vector and similar vectors. Using these vectors, a high percentage of G418 resistant clones, 5-10%, are found to express significant amounts of recombinant proteins (1-10 mg/l of antibody). These are usually single plasmid copy integrants, and can easily be amplified using methotrexate to obtain 30-100 pg/cell/day of secreted immunoglobulin. Table 6 lists the antibody levels obtained before and after gene amplification of 3 antibodies expressed in CHO cells utilizing this system.



- 51 -

Antibody	before ampli- fication mg/l	after amplifica- tion in spinner flask mg/l	after amplifica- tion in fermentor mg/l
Anti-CD4 $\gamma$ 1	1-2	100-110	950
Anti-CD4 $\gamma$ 4	3-4	125-150	N.D.
Anti-CD20	5-10	200-300	650

5 Table 6. Antibody production levels using IDEC's CHO expression technology.

#### EXAMPLE 7

##### Cloning of 24-31 V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> DNA Sequences

The anti-gp39 24-31 V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> gene segments were cloned and sequenced. Following analyses of their sequences,  
 10 humanized versions of the V region gene segments were designed. The corresponding DNA sequences were synthesized and cloned into a high-level expression vector containing human constant region genes. A CHO transfectant producing the humanized 24-31 antibody is then established. To  
 15 confirm that the humanized version of the anti-gp39 antibody retains its gp39 binding affinity, the relative affinities of the murine and humanized antibodies were compared in direct binding and competition assays. In addition, the ability of the humanized 24-31 to block CD40 binding to  
 20 gp39 and to inhibit T cell-dependent antibody production is evaluated.

- 52 -

# 1. Cloning of the 24-31 V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> gene segments

a. **Preparation of cDNA.** PolyA<sup>+</sup> mRNA was prepared from 2 x 10<sup>6</sup> cells each of the 24-31 hybridoma and the NS1 cell line, (Carroll et al, *Mol. Immunol.*, 10:991 (1988)), the fusion partner used in the generation of the 24-31 hybridoma, utilizing an Invitrogen Corporation Micro-Fast Track™ mRNA isolation kit, according to the manufacturer's protocol. First strand cDNA was synthesized utilizing 50 pmoles oligo-dT and 5 units M-MLV reverse transcriptase (Promega) (Sambrook et al, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, 2nd Ed., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press (1989)) followed by Sephadex G-25 chromatography.

b. **PCR amplification Of V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> cDNA.** 24-31 and NS1 cDNA were amplified by PCR using a panel of 5' primers specific for V<sub>k</sub> or V<sub>H</sub> leader sequences in combination with 3' constant region primers. The panel of 5'V<sub>H</sub> primers are identical to those described by Jones and Bendig (*Bio/Technol.*, 9:88 (1991); Errata, *Bio/Technol.*, 9:579 (1991)). The panel of 5'V<sub>k</sub> primers (Jones et al, (*Id.*)) were modified to convert the Sal I cloning site recognition sequences (GTCGAC) into Bgl II recognition sequences (AGATCT) to facilitate the cloning of the amplified gene segments into IDEC's N5KG1 expression vector (See **Figure 1**). The 3' V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> primers contain a Bsi WI cloning site sequence at amino acid positions 108-109 (numbering according to Kabat et al, "Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest," 5th Ed., NIH (1991)) and a Nhe I cloning site sequence at positions 114-115, respectively, and have the following sequences:

- 53 -

TGCAGCATCCCGTACGTTTGATTCCAGCTT(C<sub>k</sub>) and  
GGGGGTGTCGTGCTAGCTG(A/C) (G/A)GAGAC(G/A)GTGA (C<sub>γ1</sub>). This  
primer panel has been previously used by the Assignee to  
amplify and clone the C2B8 anti-CD20 antibody (Nishioka et  
5 al, *J. Immunol.*, 153:1027 (1994)) and numerous other mouse  
V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> gene segments (data not shown).

In order to determine the correct primer pair for the  
amplification of the 24-31 V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> gene segments, the 24-  
31 cDNA were amplified in 23 individual reactions contain-  
10 ing one of the 11 5'V<sub>k</sub> primers in combination with the C<sub>k</sub>  
primer or one of the 12 5'V<sub>H</sub> primers in combination with the  
C<sub>γ1</sub> primer. For comparison, NS1 cDNA was amplified using  
the same panel of primers. 1 μl cDNA (1/50 of the cDNA  
sample) was amplified in a 100 μl final volume containing 5  
15 units Taq DNA polymerase (Perkin Elmer), 10 mM Tris-HCl, pH  
8.3, 50 mM KCl, 1.5 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.25 mM each of dCTP, dGTP,  
dATP, and TTP, 50 pmoles 3' constant region primer, and 50  
pmoles 5' primer. The amplification cycle consisted of  
denaturation for 1 minute at 95°C, annealing for 2 minutes  
20 at 50°C, and extension for 2 minutes at 72°C, repeated 34  
times. The amplified products were analyzed by agarose gel  
electrophoresis. The 24-31 PCR reactions yielding a unique  
amplified product for V<sub>k</sub> and for V<sub>H</sub> were repeated and the  
products from duplicate PCR reactions cloned. PCR ampli-  
25 fied products are agarose gel-purified (Sambrook et al,  
*Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, 2nd Ed. (1989)) and  
digested with Bgl II and Bsi WI (for V<sub>k</sub>) or Sal I and Nhe I  
(for V<sub>H</sub>). The products are ligated (Ausabel et al, *Current*

- 54 -

*Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Vol. 2, Greene Publ. Assoc. (1992)) sequentially into IDEC's vector, N5KG1.

Following transformation of *E. coli* XL1-blue cells (Stratagene), plasmid DNA was prepared, and the  $V_k$  and  $V_H$  sequences obtained from the duplicate constructs (sequencing performed by Scripps Research Institute Core Facility, La Jolla, CA). The sequences of the endogenous light and heavy chains of the NS1 fusion partner are known (Carroll et al, *Mol. Immunol.*, 10:991 (1988); Kabat et al, (1991) (Id.)) and were used to distinguish PCR products resulting from the amplification of the 24-31 versus the NS1 fusion partner V regions.

#### EXAMPLE 8

##### Synthesis of gene segments encoding humanized 24-31 V regions.

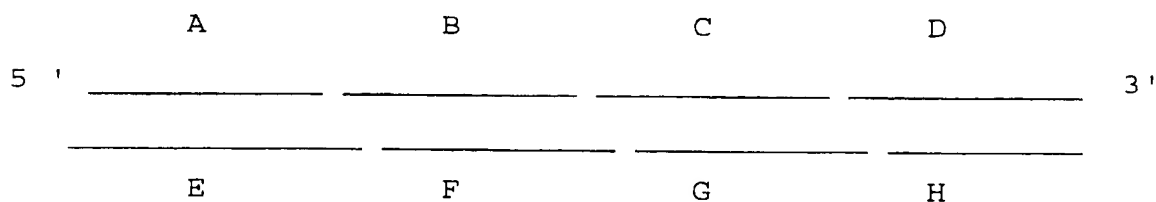
Humanized versions containing the most preferred humanized 24-31  $V_k$  and  $V_H$  sequences identified in **Tables 1 and 2** as humanized  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  (1) were synthesized. Specifically, four pairs of overlapping, complementary oligonucleotides (oligos) encoding the above-identified humanized  $V_k$  or  $V_H$  regions were synthesized (Midland Chemicals) and purified by denaturing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (Ausubel et al, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Vol. 2, Greene Publ. Assoc. (1992)). Each oligo is approximately 100 bases in length and overlap by 20 bases the adjacent complementary oligonucleotide. The  $V_k$  and  $V_H$  5' oligos contain Bgl II and Sal I cloning sites and the 3' oligos possess Bsi WI and Nhe I cloning sites, respectively. Each variable region gene segment was assembled from the syn-

- 55 -

thetic oligos, diagrammed below, using the following procedure (summarized in Watson et al, *Recombinant DNA*, 2nd Ed., Scientif. Amer. Books, NY, NY (1992)). Complementary oligo pairs (A+E, B+F, C+G, D+F) were kinased using 300 pmoles of each primer and T4 polynucleotide kinase (Promega) according to the manufacturer's protocol. The oligos were annealed by heating to 95°C and slow cooling to room temperature. The annealed oligo pairs were ligated (A/E with B/F and C/G with D/H) utilizing 6 units T4 DNA ligase (New England Biolabs). After digestion with the appropriate 5' or 3' cloning site restriction endonuclease, the approximately 200 base pair DNA fragments were purified by electroelution following polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (Sambrook et al, (*Id.*)). The synthetic gene fragments were then inserted into IDEC's proprietary high-level expression vector, N5KG1, under the transcriptional control of the CMV promoter and enhancer elements. The ligation reaction contains the 2 gel-purified fragments (A/E/B/F and C/G/D/H) and N5KG1 at a molar ratio of 100:100:1, respectively. After transformation of XL1-blue cells, plasmid DNA was prepared and the sequences of the synthetic gene segments confirmed. The resulting construct, h24-31, encodes the humanized 24-31 V region segments and human kappa and gamma 1 constant regions. As indicated, this antibody contains the humanized variable heavy and humanized variable light sequences identified in **Table 1** and **Table 2** as the "(1)" sequences, which are predicted to provide for humanized antibody having optimal gp39 properties. In addition, a construct was generated which contains V<sub>L</sub>#2 in combination

- 56 -

with V<sub>H</sub>#1 (version 2 of humanized 24-31). Similar constructs utilizing IDEC's proprietary vectors have been used for high-level expression of IDEC's anti-CD20 (Reff et al, *Blood*, 83:425 (1994)) and anti-CD4 (Newman et al, *Biol. Technology*, 10:1455 (1992)) antibodies.



10

**EXAMPLE 9****2. Production and characterization of humanized 24-31**

**a. Generation of CHO transfectants producing humanized 24-31 (version 1 and version 2).**

CHO transfectants expressing humanized 24-31 (version 1 or version 2) were generated by electroporation of  $4 \times 10^6$  CHO cells with linearized h24-31 DNA (version 1 or version 2) followed by selection in G418. The cell culture supernatants from G418 resistant clones were assayed for immunoglobulin production by sandwich ELISA employing a goat anti-human kappa to capture the immunoglobulin. Immunoglobulin binding was measured by incubating with a horse radish peroxidase (HRP)-conjugated goat antibody specific for human IgG, followed by HRP substrate, 0.4 mg/ml O-Phenylene-diamine (OPD) in a citrate buffer (9-34 g/l C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>8</sub>O<sub>7</sub> and 14.2 g/l Na<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub>), pH 5.0, including 0.0175% H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>. The plate was read in a Molecular Devices "Vmax, kinetic microplate reader" spectrophotometer at 490 nm.

- 57 -

EXAMPLE 10**b. Characterization of humanized 24-31 (version 1).**

The humanized anti-gp39 24-31 antibody is evaluated initially for direct binding to cell surface gp39 expressed on 50D4, the gp39 CHO transfectant described in **Example 5**. Supernatants from the G418-resistant h24-31 CHO transfectants that produce immunoglobulin are tested for binding to 50D4 cells and, as negative control, to CHO cells. In this assay 50D4,  $1 \times 10^5$  /well, are bound to the bottom of 96 well, poly-L-lysine coated polystyrene plates. The cells are fixed in 0.5% glutaraldehyde in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) for 15 minutes. Plates coated with CHO cells are generated similarly. The cell culture supernatants are added and antibody binding measured using a HRP-conjugated goat anti-human IgG, as described above.

Two assays are used to determine if the humanized 24-31 antibody retains its affinity to gp39 relative to the original murine 24-31 antibody, (i) half-maximal binding concentration and (ii) a competition assay using 50D4 cells. For this purpose the antibodies will be purified on protein A and the concentration of each antibody determined by ELISA by a comparison to isotype matched controls. Half-maximal binding (i) are determined by incubating humanized 24-31 with 50D4 cells at various concentrations from 2  $\mu$ g/ml to 0.1 ng/ml. The concentration resulting in a half-maximal OD 490 reading, as described above, is compared with the half-maximal binding of murine 24-31. In the competition assay (ii) the humanized 24-31 antibody and the murine 24-31 antibody are mixed in various molar ratios

- 58 -

ranging from 100:1 to 1:100, and their ability to compete for binding to 50D4 cells measured. Two sets are run, one where the binding of the humanized antibody will be measured using goat-anti-human IgG (anti-mouse IgG depleted)-HRP and one where the binding of murine antibody is measured using goat-anti-mouse IgG (anti-human IgG depleted)-HRP. Binding curves, one for the murine and one for the humanized antibody, based on molar ratios, are generated and their relative affinities calculated. These assays will confirm the anti-gp39 binding properties of the subject humanized antibodies derived from 24-31.

#### EXAMPLE 11

##### **Blocking of CD40-Ig binding to gp39 by humanized 24-31.**

After establishing that humanized anti-gp39 binds to gp39, an assay is effected to confirm that the humanized anti-gp39 retains its ability to block the binding of the ligand to its receptor. For this purpose, activated human peripheral blood T cells, or the gp39-transfected CHO cells, 50D4, are pretreated with graded concentrations of murine 24-31 or with humanized 24-31 for 15 minutes at 4°C. Following this preincubation, CD40-Ig-biotin is added and the binding determined by flow cytometry using PE-avidin. Concentrations of mAbs to achieve a 50% reduction in CD40-Ig binding are determined.



- 59 -

**EXAMPLE 12**

**Blocking of B cell proliferation and differentiation by humanized 24-31.**

To confirm that humanized 24-31 blocks gp39 function,  
5 B cells are cultured with a soluble fusion protein of gp39 (gp39-CD8) in the presence or absence of a range of doses of murine 24-31 or humanized 24-31. B cell proliferative response is assessed by <sup>3</sup>H-thymidine incorporation as shown in **Figure 2A**.

10 T cell dependent B cell differentiation (Ig production) is blocked by mAbs to gp39. To confirm that the subject humanized 24-31 antibodies are effective in blocking the function of native gp39 expressed on the surface of activated human T cells, the ability of the subject human-  
15 ized 24-31 antibodies inhibit T cell-induced B cell differentiation is assessed. B cells are co-cultured with anti-CD3 activated T cells in the presence or absence of humanized 24-31 and murine 24-31. Polyclonal IgM, IgG, and IgA production is assessed after 12 days (see **Figure 2B**).  
20 These results will confirm that humanized anti-gp39 can block CD40 binding and interfere with T-cell-dependent B cell activation via CD40.

**EXAMPLE 13****Binding Capacity**

25 This experiment was effected to determine the reactivity of the murine, chimeric, and humanized (version 1) 24-31 antibodies to the gp39 antigen relative to the concentration of antibody.

**Protocol:**

- 60 -

**Plate Preparation**

1. Add 50 of poly-1-lysine to each well on the 96 well plate. Incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature. Flick plates to remove poly-1-lysine.
- 5 2. Wash mgp39-CHO cells (Chinese hamster ovary cells expressing cell surface, membrane gp39) 3 times with HBSS by centrifuging at 1500 rpm for 5 minutes. Resuspend cells in HBSS to  $2 \times 10^6$  cells ml.
3. Add 50  $\mu$ l of cell suspension to each well and centri-  
10 fuge plates at 2000 rpm for 5 minutes.
4. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of ice cold 0.5% glutaraldehyde and incubate for 15 minutes at room temperature.
5. Flick plate and blot to remove excess glutaraldehyde. Add 150  $\mu$ l/well of 100 mM glycine with 0.1% BSA and  
15 incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature. Plates can be used immediately or frozen at  $-20^\circ\text{C}$  for future use.

**Binding Assay**

1. Thaw plate and remove glycine buffer.
- 20 2. Serially dilute, 1:2, the test antibodies in dilution buffer starting at 1  $\mu$ g/ml. Transfer 50  $\mu$ g/well of each dilution in duplicate. Incubate 2 hours at room temperature.
3. Wash plate 10 times in flowing tap water.
- 25 4. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of 1:2000 dilution of goat anti-human IgG HRP or goat anti-mouse IgG HRP. Incubate 1 hour at room temperature.
5. Wash plate 10 times in flowing tap water.

- 61 -

6. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of ABTS substrate and develop plate for 20-30 minutes. Read the plate at wavelength 405 nm with a background wavelength of 490 nm.
7. Plot graph of absorbance vs antibody concentration.

## 5 Results and Conclusions:

The binding capacities for the three anti-gp39 antibodies (murine, chimeric and humanized version 1 of 24-31) relative to the concentration of the antibodies, were essentially superimposable (see **Figure 9**). This is a good indication that these antibodies have similar binding capacities for human gp39, indicating that the humanized antibody has retained the gp39 binding affinity of murine 24-31.

### EXAMPLE 14

#### 15 Competition Between Biotin Labeled Murine 24-31 and Chimeric and Humanized Version 1 24-31

The ability of the chimeric and humanized (version 1) 24-31 antibodies to compete with the murine 24-31 for binding to mgp39-CHO cells basis was evaluated. The ability of the humanized 24-31 to compete with the murine 24-31 for binding to mgp39-CHO was used to evaluate whether in the humanized antibody the exchanges of the murine framework residues with their human counterparts resulted in a significant loss ( $\geq 3x$  decrease) of affinity.

#### 25 Protocol:

##### Plate Preparation

1. Add 50 of poly-1-lysine to each well on the 96 well plate. Incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature. Flick plates to remove poly-1-lysine.

- 62 -

2. Wash mgp39-CHO cells 3 times with HBSS by centrifuging at 1500 rpm for 5 minutes. Resuspend cells in HBSS to  $2 \times 10^6$  cells/ml.
3. Add 50  $\mu$ l of cell suspension to each well and centrifuge plates at 2000 rpm for 5 minutes.
4. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of ice cold 0.5% glutaraldehyde and incubate for 15 minutes at room temperature.
5. Flick plate and blot to remove excess glutaraldehyde. Add 150  $\mu$ l/well of 100 mM glycine with 0.1% BSA and incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature. Plates can be used immediately or frozen at  $-20^\circ\text{C}$  for future use.

#### Competition Assay

1. Thaw plate and remove glycine buffer.
2. Dilute mouse anti-gp39 biotin to 200 ng/ml in PBS with 1% BSA.
3. Serially dilute test antibodies (mouse, chimeric, and humanized 24-31) 1:2 starting at 10  $\mu$ g/ml in dilution buffer.
4. Transfer 50  $\mu$ l of diluted test antibodies and mouse anti-gp39 biotin into each well in duplicate. Several wells should contain 50  $\mu$ l dilution buffer with the mouse anti-gp39 biotin as a maximal control group. Incubate 2 hours at room temperature.
5. Wash plates 10 times in flowing tap water.
6. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of 1:2000 dilution of streptavidin HRP and incubate 1 hour at room temperature.
7. Wash plates 10 times in flowing tap water.

- 63 -

8. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of ABTS substrate and develop plate for 20-30 minutes. Read the plate at wavelength 405 nm with a background wavelength of 490 nm.
9. Percent inhibition is calculated using the average of the control wells.

#### Results and conclusions:

All three antibodies competed equally well with the biotin labeled 24-31 (see Figure 10). The competition profiles are essentially superimposable at all concentrations, within the limitations of the assay. This demonstrates that the tested humanized antibody (version 1) retains its gp39 binding affinity.

#### EXAMPLE 15

##### Modulation of T Cell Dependent B Cell Differentiation

- To confirm that the humanized 24-31 retains the in vitro functional activity of murine 24-31, the humanized 24-31 was compared to the murine 24-31 in a "Lipsky" assay. Donor peripheral blood mononuclear cells were separated into two fractions, a T and a B cell fraction. The T cells were first treated with mitomycin C, to prevent mitosis, and then activated with an anti-CD3 antibody. The B cells were added, together with either the murine or humanized (version 1) 24-31 antibodies. A positive control without antibody, and a negative control without B cells were included in the experiment. After a 10 day incubation, the supernatants were tested for the presence of human IgM.

#### Protocol:

- 64 -

1. Coat a 96 well plate with 50  $\mu$ l/well of sterile 4  
 $\mu$ g/ml anti-CD3 antibody (diluted in 50 mM Tris, pH 9)  
for 2 hours at 37°C.
2. Selectively purify T and B cells from a buffy coat  
5 using Lympho-Kwik reagents. Activate the T cells with  
50  $\mu$ g/ml mitomycin C per  $5 \times 10^6$  cells for 30 minutes at  
37°C.
3. Wash plate wells several times with sterile HBSS or  
media to remove non-adherent antibody.
- 10 4. Add  $1 \times 10^5$  purified T cells ( $2 \times 10^6$ /ml) to each well.
5. Add  $5 \times 10^5$  purified B cells ( $5 \times 10^6$ /ml) to each well.  
Add 50  $\mu$ l anti-gp39 antibody (10-0.1  $\mu$ g/ml) to each  
well in quadruplicate. Control wells should include:  
a) 0 antibody, b) 0 antibody, no T cells, and c) 0  
15 antibody, no B cells.
6. Incubate plate at 37°C/5% CO<sub>2</sub> for 12 days.
7. Access cell growth after 7 days using 3H thymidine or  
any other acceptable method on duplicate wells.
8. After 12 days, collect supernatants from duplicate  
20 wells and perform ELISA assays to determine Ig produc-  
tion (IgM).

**Results and conclusions:**

The results show that the production of human IgM is inhibited 50% by the humanized 24-31 at a concentration  
25 below 0.01  $\mu$ g/ml, similar to the inhibition level obtained  
with the murine 24-31 (see **Figure 11**). The humanized  
antibody retained its ability to inhibit T cell dependent B  
cell differentiation (IgM production) in this experiment.

- 65 -

**EXAMPLE 16****Evaluation of Humanized 24-31, Version 2**

This experiment was conducted to determine whether humanized 24-31 version 2, as compared to version 1, has a similar gp39 binding capacity in a direct binding assay.

**Protocol:**

Same as in Example 13 above.

**Results and conclusions.**

The results show that the binding capacity of the two 24-31 versions are essentially superimposable (see Figure 12). This indicates that the two versions have comparable binding activity to gp39.

**EXAMPLE 17**

This experiment was conducted to measure the K<sub>d</sub> of 24-31, and two humanized versions, 1 and 2.

**Protocol:**

A predetermined amount of each of the three antibodies (murine, version 1 or version 2 24-31) was labeled with <sup>125</sup>I using IODO-BEADS® (Pierce). Antibody bound-<sup>125</sup>I was separated from free <sup>125</sup>I by size separation on a Sephadex-G25/DEAE/Amberlite column.

Direct binding of the <sup>125</sup>I-labeled antibody to murine gp39-CHO cells was tested in a dilution series, in order to determine both counts/μg and the appropriate working concentration (≈half-maximal binding concentration).

<sup>125</sup>I-labeled antibody was mixed and incubated with non-labeled antibody in a dilution series. Based on the total amount of bound antibody and the amount of free antibody, a Scatchard plot was generated from a bound vs. bound-free

- 66 -

graph. The total antibody concentration was based on a standard size of 75 kD for one active site.

The Kd was calculated by generating a "best fit" line. The inverse of the slope of the curve is the Kd. The correlation coefficient,  $r^2$ , was also computed.

#### Results:

The Scatchard plots were analyzed. The Kd's from this analysis are: Version 2, Kd = 14 nM; murine 24-31, Kd = 8.51 nM; version 1, Kd = 5.6. The results are depicted in Figures 13, 14 and 15, respectively. These results provide further evidence that the subject humanized antibodies bind the gp39 antigen similarly to 24-31.

#### Use

The humanized anti-gp39 antibodies of the present invention have potential in treating any disease condition wherein gp39 modulation and/or inhibition of the gp39-CD40 interaction is therapeutically beneficial. Moreover, the subject humanized anti-gp39 antibodies may be used in treatment of diseases wherein suppression of antibody responses to antigens are desirable. Such conditions include both autoimmune and non-autoimmune disorders.

The ability of anti-gp39 antibodies to prevent CD40 signaling in B cells is functionally translated into marked inhibition of T cell-dependent antibody responses *in vivo*. Therefore, autoimmune diseases which are mediated by auto-antibody production would be expected to benefit from anti-gp39 antibody therapy. Such diseases include systemic lupus erythematosus, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, myasthenia gravis and a subpopulation of diabetic patients



- 67 -

with anti-insulin and anti-insulin receptor antibodies. In addition, CD40 signaling in B cells and dendritic cells is essential for upregulation of co-signaling receptors such as B7.1 and B7.2 molecules. Blocking of this CD40 signaling by anti-gp39 antibodies interferes with antigen presentation to T cells, resulting in inhibition of T cell activation and T cell-mediated responses. The therapeutic efficacy of anti-gp39 antibodies in disease models such as CIA, EAE, NOD mice, GVHD and graft rejection further confirms the antibody's inhibitory effect on T cell-mediated responses. Based on this mechanism of action supported by the efficacy in animal models, the therapeutic potential of the subject humanized anti-gp39 antibodies extend to such diseases as RA, MS, diabetes, psoriasis, GVHD and graft rejection.

Specific conditions which are potentially treatable by administration of the subject humanized antibodies include the following:

Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis; Autoimmune hemolytic anemia; Acanthosis nigricans; Allergic contact dermatitis; Addison's disease; Atopic dermatitis; Alopecia areata; Alopecia universalis; Amyloidosis; Anaphylactoid purpura; Anaphylactoid reaction; Aplastic anemia; Angioedema, hereditary; Angioedema, idiopathic; Ankylosing spondylitis; Arteritis, cranial; Arteritis, giant cell; Arteritis, Takayasu's; Arteritis, temporal; Asthma; Ataxia-telangiectasia; Autoimmune oophoritis; Autoimmune orchitis; Autoimmune polyendocrine failure; Behcet's disease; Berger's disease; Buerger's disease; Bullous pemphigus;

- 68 -

Candidiasis, chronic mucocutaneous; Caplan's syndrome;  
Post-myocardial infarction syndrome; Post-pericardiotomy  
syndrome; Carditis; Celiac sprue; Chagas's disease;  
Chediak-Higashi syndrome; Churg-Strauss disease; Cogan's  
5 syndrome; Cold agglutinin disease; CREST syndrome; Crohn's  
disease; Cryoglobulinemia; Cryptogenic fibrosing alveo-  
litis; Dermatitis herpetiformis; Dermatomyositis; Diabetes  
mellitus; Diamond-Blackfan syndrome; DiGeorge syndrome;  
Discoid lupus erythematosus; Eosinophilic fascitis; Epi-  
10 scleritis; Erythema elevatum diutinum; Erythema marginatum;  
Erythema multiforme; Erythema nodosum; Familial Mediterra-  
nean fever; Felty's syndrome; Fibrosis pulmonary; Glomeru-  
lonephritis, anaphylactoid; Glomerulonephritis, autoimmune;  
Glomerulonephritis, post-streptococcal; Glomerulonephritis,  
15 post-transplantation; Glomerulopathy, membranous; Goodpas-  
ture's syndrome; Graft-vs.-host disease; Granulocytopenia,  
immune-mediated; Granuloma annulare; Granulomatosis, aller-  
gic; Granulomatous myositis; Grave's disease; Hashimoto's  
thyroiditis; Hemolytic disease of the newborn; Hemochroma-  
20 tosis, idiopathic; Henoch-Schoenlein purpura; Hepatitis,  
chronic active and chronic progressive; Histiocytosis X;  
Hypereosinophilic syndrome; Idiopathic thrombocytopenic  
purpura; Job's syndrome; Juvenile dermatomyositis; Juvenile  
rheumatoid arthritis (Juvenile chronic arthritis);  
25 Kawasaki's disease; Keratitis; Keratoconjunctivitis sicca;  
Landry-Guillain-Barre-Strohl syndrome; Leprosy, leproma-  
tous; Loeffler's syndrome; Lyell's syndrome; Lyme disease;  
Lymphomatoid granulomatosis; Mastocytosis, systemic; Mixed  
connective tissue disease; Mononeuritis multiplex; Muckle-

- 69 -

Wells syndrome; Mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome; Mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome; Multicentric reticulohistiocytosis; Multiple sclerosis; Myasthenia gravis; Mycosis fungoides; Necrotizing vasculitis, systemic; Nephrotic syndrome; Overlap syndrome; Panniculitis; Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria; Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria; Pemphigoid; Pemphigus; Pemphigus erythematosus; Pemphigus foliaceus; Pemphigus vulgaris; Pigeon breeder's disease; Pneumonitis, hypersensitivity; Polyarteritis nodosa; Polymyalgia rheumatica; Polymyositis; Polyneuritis, idiopathic; Portuguese familial polyneuropathies; Pre-eclampsia/-eclampsia; Primary biliary cirrhosis; Progressive systemic sclerosis (Scleroderma); Psoriasis; Psoriatic arthritis; Pulmonary alveolar proteinosis; Pulmonary fibrosis, Raynaud's phenomenon/syndrome; Reidel's thyroiditis; Reiter's syndrome, Relapsing polychondritis; Rheumatic fever; Rheumatoid arthritis; Sarcoidosis; Scleritis; Sclerosing cholangitis; Serum sickness; Sezary syndrome; Sjogren's syndrome; Stevens-Johnson syndrome; Still's disease; Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis; Sympathetic ophthalmia; Systemic lupus erythematosus; Transplant rejection; Ulcerative colitis; Undifferentiated connective tissue disease; Urticaria, chronic; Urticaria, cold; Uveitis; Vitiligo; Weber-Christian disease; Wegener's granulomatosis; Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome.

Of these, the preferred indications treatable or presentable by administration of anti-gp39 antibodies include autoimmune hemolytic anemia; aplastic anemia; arteritis, temporal; diabetes mellitus; Felty's syndrome;

- 70 -

Goodpasture's syndrome; graft-vs-host disease; idiopathic thrombocytopenia pupura; myasthenia gravis; multiple sclerosis; polyarteritis nodosa; psoriasis; psoriatic arthritis; rheumatoid arthritis; systemic lupus erythematosus; 5 asthma; allergic conditions; and transplant rejection.

The amount of antibody useful to produce a therapeutic effect can be determined by standard techniques well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. The antibodies will generally be provided by standard technique within a pharmaceutically acceptable buffer, and may be administered by 10 any desired route. Because of the efficacy of the presently claimed antibodies and their tolerance by humans it is possible to administer these antibodies repetitively in order to combat various diseases or disease states within a 15 human.

The subject anti-gp39 humanized antibodies (or fragments thereof) of this invention are also useful for inducing immunomodulation, e.g., inducing suppression of a human's or animal's immune system. This invention therefore relates to a method of prophylactically or therapeutically inducing immunomodulation in a human or other animal in need thereof by administering an effective, non-toxic amount of such an antibody of this invention to such human or other animal. 20

The fact that the antibodies of this invention have utility in inducing immunosuppression means that they are useful in the treatment or prevention of resistance to or rejection of transplanted organs or tissues (e.g., kidney, heart, lung, bone marrow, skin, cornea, etc.); the treat- 25

- 71 -

ment or prevention of autoimmune, inflammatory, proliferative and hyperproliferative diseases, and of cutaneous manifestations of immunologically mediated diseases (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, lupus erythematosus, systemic lupus erythematosus, Hashimoto's thyroiditis, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, type 1 diabetes, uveitis, nephrotic syndrome, psoriasis, atypical dermatitis, contact dermatitis and further eczematous dermatitides, seborrheic dermatitis, Lichen planus, Pemphigus, bullous pemphigoid, Epidermolysis bullosa, urticaria, angioedemas, vasculitides, erythema, cutaneous eosinophilias, Alopecia areata, etc.); the treatment of reversible obstructive airways disease, intestinal inflammations and allergies (e.g., Coeliac disease, proctitis, eosinophilia gastroenteritis, mastocytosis, Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis) and food-related allergies (e.g., migraine, rhinitis and eczema). Also, the subject antibodies have potential utility for treatment of non-autoimmune conditions wherein immunomodulation is desirable, e.g., graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), transplant rejection, asthma, leukemia, lymphoma, among others.

Also, the subject antibodies can be used as immunosuppressants during cellular or gene therapy. This potentially will enable such cells or gene therapy constructs to be administered repeatedly, or at higher dosages without an adverse immunogenic response.

One skilled in the art would be able, by routine experimentation, to determine what an effective, non-toxic amount of antibody would be for the purpose of inducing

- 72 -

immunosuppression. Generally, however, an effective dosage will be in the range of about 0.05 to 100 milligrams per kilogram body weight per day.

5 The antibodies of the invention may be administered to a human or other animal in accordance with the aforementioned methods of treatment in an amount sufficient to produce such effect to a therapeutic or prophylactic degree. Such antibodies of the invention can be administered to such human or other animal in a conventional dosage form  
10 prepared by combining the antibody of the invention with a conventional pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent according to known techniques. It will be recognized by one of skill in the art that the form and character of the pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent is dictated  
15 by the amount of active ingredient with which it is to be combined, the route of administration and other well-known variables.

The route of administration of the antibody (or fragment thereof) of the invention may be oral, parenteral, by  
20 inhalation or topical. The term parenteral as used herein includes intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous, rectal, vaginal or intraperitoneal administration. The subcutaneous and intramuscular forms of parenteral administration are generally preferred.

25 The daily parenteral and oral dosage regimens for employing compounds of the invention to prophylactically or therapeutically induce immunosuppression will generally be in the range of about 0.05 to 100, but preferably about 0.5 to 10, milligrams per kilogram body weight per day.

- 73 -

The antibody of the invention may also be administered by inhalation. By "inhalation" is meant intranasal and oral inhalation administration. Appropriate dosage forms for such administration, such as an aerosol formulation or a metered dose inhaler, may be prepared by conventional techniques. The preferred dosage amount of a compound of the invention to be employed is generally within the range of about 10 to 100 milligrams.

The antibody of the invention may also be administered topically. By topical administration is meant non-systemic administration and includes the application of an antibody (or fragment thereof) compound of the invention externally to the epidermis, to the buccal cavity and instillation of such an antibody into the ear, eye and nose, and where it does not significantly enter the blood stream. By systemic administration is meant oral, intravenous, intraperitoneal and intramuscular administration. The amount of an antibody required for therapeutic or prophylactic effect will, of course, vary with the antibody chosen, the nature and severity of the condition being treated and the animal undergoing treatment, and is ultimately at the discretion of the physician. A suitable topical dose of an antibody of the invention will generally be within the range of about 1 to 100 milligrams per kilogram body weight daily.

#### 25 Formulations

While it is possible for an antibody or fragment thereof to be administered alone, it is preferable to present it as a pharmaceutical formulation. The active ingredient may comprise, for topical administration, from

- 74 -

0.001% to 10% w/w, e.g., from 1% to 2% by weight of the formulation, although it may comprise as much as 10% w/w but preferably not in excess of 5% w/w and more preferably from 0.1% to 1% w/w of the formulation.

5           The topical formulations of the present invention, comprise an active ingredient together with one or more acceptable carrier(s) therefor and optionally any other therapeutic ingredients(s). The carrier(s) must be "ac-  
10           ceptable" in the sense of being compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation and not deleterious to the recipient thereof.

          Formulations suitable for topical administration include liquid or semi-liquid preparations suitable for penetration through the skin to the site of where treatment  
15           is required, such as liniments, lotions, creams, ointments or pastes, and drops suitable for administration to the eye, ear or nose.

          Drops according to the present invention may comprise sterile aqueous or oily solutions or suspensions and may be  
20           prepared by dissolving the active ingredient in a suitable aqueous solution of a bactericidal and/or fungicidal agent and/or any other suitable preservative, and preferably including a surface active agent. The resulting solution may then be clarified by filtration, transferred to a  
25           suitable container which is then sealed and sterilized by autoclaving or maintaining at 90°-100°C for half an hour. Alternatively, the solution may be sterilized by filtration and transferred to the container by an aseptic technique. Examples of bactericidal and fungicidal agents suitable for



- 75 -

inclusion in the drops are phenylmercuric nitrate or acetate (0.002%), benzalkonium chloride (0.01%) and chlorhexidine acetate (0.01%). Suitable solvents for the preparation of an oily solution include glycerol, diluted alcohol and propylene glycol.

Lotions according to the present invention include those suitable for application to the skin or eye. An eye lotion may comprise a sterile aqueous solution optionally containing a bactericide and may be prepared by methods similar to those for the preparation of drops. Lotions or liniments for application to the skin may also include an agent to hasten drying and to cool the skin, such as an alcohol or acetone, and/or a moisturizer such as glycerol or an oil such as castor oil or arachis oil.

Creams, ointments or pastes according to the present invention are semi-solid formulations of the active ingredient for external application. They may be made by mixing the active ingredient in finely-divided or powdered form, alone or in solution or suspension in an aqueous or non-aqueous fluid, with the aid of suitable machinery, with a greasy or non-greasy basis. The basis may comprise hydrocarbons such as hard, soft or liquid paraffin, glycerol, beeswax, a metallic soap; a mucilage; an oil of natural origin such as almond, corn, arachis, castor or olive oil; wool fat or its derivatives, or a fatty acid such as stearic or oleic acid together with an alcohol such as propylene glycol or macrogels. The formulation may incorporate any suitable surface active agent such as an anionic, cationic or non-ionic surface active such as sorbitan

- 76 -

esters or polyoxyethylene derivatives thereof. Suspending agents such as natural gums, cellulose derivatives or inorganic materials such as silicaceous silicas, and other ingredients such as lanolin, may also be included.

5           It will be recognized by one of skill in the art that the optimal quantity and spacing of individual dosages of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention will be determined by the nature and extent of the condition being treated, the form, route and site of administration, and  
10       the particular animal being treated, and that such optimums can be determined by conventional techniques. It will also be appreciated by one of skill in the art that the optimal course of treatment, i.e., the number of doses of an anti-  
15       body or fragment thereof of the invention given per day for a defined number of days, can be ascertained by those skilled in the art using conventional course of treatment determination tests.

          Without further elaboration, it is believed that one skilled in the art can, using the preceding description,  
20       utilize the present invention to its fullest extent. The following are, therefore, to be construed as merely illustrative examples and not a limitation of the scope of the present invention in any way.

#### Capsule Composition

25           A pharmaceutical composition of this invention in the form of a capsule is prepared by filling a standard two-piece hard gelatin capsule with 50 mg. of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention, in powdered form, 100

- 77 -

mg. of lactose, 32 mg. of talc and 8 mg. of magnesium stearate.

Injectable Parenteral Composition

A pharmaceutical composition of this invention in a form suitable for administration by injection is prepared by stirring 1.5k by weight of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention in 10k by volume propylene glycol and water. The solution is sterilized by filtration.

Ointment Composition

Antibody or fragment thereof of the invention 1.0 g.  
White soft paraffin to 100.0 g.

The antibody or fragment thereof of the invention is dispersed in a small volume of the vehicle to produce a smooth, homogeneous product. Collapsible metal tubes are then filled with the dispersion.

Topical Cream Composition

Antibody or fragment thereof of the invention 1.0 g.  
Polawax GP 200 20.0 g.  
Lanolin Anhydrous 2.0 g.  
White Beeswax 2.5 g.  
Methyl hydroxybenzoate 0.1 g.  
Distilled Water to 100.0 g.

The polawax, beeswax and lanolin are heated together at 60°C. A solution of methyl hydroxybenzoate is added and homogenization is achieved using high speed stirring. The temperature is then allowed to fall to 50°C. The antibody or fragment thereof of the invention is then added and dispersed throughout, and the composition is allowed to cool with slow speed stirring.

- 78 -

Topical Lotion Composition

Antibody or fragment thereof of the invention 1.0 g.

Sorbitan Monolaurate 0.6 g. Polysorbate 20 0.6 g.

Cetostearyl Alcohol 1.2 g. Glycerin 6.0 g.

5 Methyl Hydroxybenzoate 0.2 g.

Purified Water B.P. to 100.00 ml. (B.P. = British Pharmacopeia)

The methyl hydroxybenzoate and glycerin are dissolved in 70 ml. of the water at 75°C. The sorbitan monolaurate, polysorbate 20 and cetostearyl alcohol are melted together at 75°C and added to the aqueous solution. The resulting emulsion is homogenized, allowed to cool with continuous stirring and the antibody or fragment thereof of the invention is added as a suspension in the remaining water. The whole suspension is stirred until homogenized.

Eye Drop Composition

Antibody or fragment thereof of the invention 0.5 g.

Methyl Hydroxybenzoate 0.01 g.

Propyl Hydroxybenzoate 0.04 g.

20 Purified Water B.P. to 100.00 ml.

The methyl and propyl hydroxybenzoates are dissolved in 70 ml. purified water at 75°C and the resulting solution is allowed to cool. The antibody or fragment thereof of the invention is then added, and the solution is sterilized by filtration through a membrane filter (0.022  $\mu$ m pore size), and packed aseptically into suitable sterile containers.

- 79 -

Composition for Administration by Inhalation

For an aerosol container with a capacity of 15-20 ml: mix 10 mg. of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention with 0.2-0.5k of a lubricating agent, such as polysorbate 85 or oleic acid, and disperse such mixture in a propellant, such as freon, preferably in a combination of (1,2 dichlorotetrafluoroethane) and difluorochloromethane and put into an appropriate aerosol container adapted for either intranasal or oral inhalation administration.

10 Composition for Administration by Inhalation For an aerosol container with a capacity of 15-20 ml: dissolve 10 mg. of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention in ethanol (6-8 ml.), add 0.1-0.2k of a lubricating agent, such as polysorbate 85 or oleic acid; and disperse such in a propellant, such as freon, preferably in combination of (1-2 dichlorotetrafluoroethane) and difluorochloromethane, and put into an appropriate aerosol container adapted for either intranasal or oral inhalation administration.

The antibodies and pharmaceutical compositions of the invention are particularly useful for parenteral administration, i.e., subcutaneously, intramuscularly or intravenously. The compositions for parenteral administration will commonly comprise a solution of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention or a cocktail thereof dissolved in an acceptable carrier, preferably an aqueous carrier. A variety of aqueous carriers may be employed, e.g., water, buffered water, 0.4k saline, 0.3% glycine, and the like. These solutions are sterile and generally free of particulate matter. These solutions may be sterilized

- 80 -

by conventional, well-known sterilization techniques. The compositions may contain pharmaceutically acceptable auxiliary substances as required to approximate physiological conditions such as pH adjusting and buffering agents, etc.

5 The concentration of the antibody or fragment thereof of the invention in such pharmaceutical formulation can vary widely, i.e., from less than about 0.5k, usually at or at least about 1% to as much as 15 or 20% by weight, and will be selected primarily based on fluid volumes, viscosities,  
10 etc., according to the particular mode of administration selected.

Thus, a pharmaceutical composition of the invention for intramuscular injection could be prepared to contain 1 mL sterile buffered water, and 50 mg. of an antibody or  
15 fragment thereof of the invention. Similarly, a pharmaceutical composition of the invention for intravenous infusion could be made up to contain 250 ml. of sterile Ringer's solution, and 150 mg. of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention. Actual methods for preparing parenterally  
20 administrable compositions are well-known or will be apparent to those skilled in the art, and are described in more detail in, e.g., *Remington's Pharmaceutical Science*, 15th ed., Mack Publishing Company, Easton, PA, hereby incorporated by reference herein.

25 The antibodies (or fragments thereof) of the invention can be lyophilized for storage and reconstituted in a suitable carrier prior to use. This technique has been shown to be effective with conventional immune globulins

- 81 -

and art-known lyophilization and reconstitution techniques can be employed.

Depending on the intended result, the pharmaceutical composition of the invention can be administered for prophylactic and/or therapeutic treatments. In therapeutic application, compositions are administered to a patient already suffering from a disease, in an amount sufficient to cure or at least partially arrest the disease and its complications. In prophylactic applications, compositions containing the present antibodies or a cocktail thereof are administered to a patient not already in a disease state to enhance the patient's resistance.

Single or multiple administrations of the pharmaceutical compositions can be carried out with dose levels and pattern being selected by the treating physician. In any event, the pharmaceutical composition of the invention should provide a quantity of the altered antibodies (or fragments thereof) of the invention sufficient to effectively treat the patient.

It should also be noted that the antibodies of this invention may be used for the design and synthesis of either peptide or non-peptide compounds (mimetics) which would be useful in the same therapy as the antibody. See, e.g., Saragovi et al, *Science*, 253:792-795 (1991).

From the foregoing, it will be appreciated that, although specific embodiments of the invention have been described herein for purposes of illustration, various modifications may be made without diverting from the scope

- 82 -

of the invention. Accordingly, the invention is not limited by the appended claims.



- 83 -

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A humanized antibody which is capable of competing with the murine 24-31 antibody for inhibiting CD40 binding to gp39.
- 5        2. The antibody of claim 1 which contains the complementarity determining regions of the 24-31 antibody as set forth in Figures 4-8 or variants and equivalents which contain one or more conservative amino acid substitutions.
- 10       3. A humanized antibody derived from murine monoclonal antibody 24-31.
- 15       4. A humanized antibody derived from murine monoclonal antibody 24-31 which retains at least about one-third the gp39 antigen binding affinity of the murine 24-31 antibody.
- 20       5. A humanized antibody derived from murine monoclonal antibody 24-31 which retains the half-maximal potency in *in vitro* functional activity in a B cell assay at a concentration of not more than three times the concentration of the parent murine 24-31 antibody.
- 20       6. The method of Claim 5, wherein the B-cell assay measures T-cell dependent antibody production.

- 84 -

7. The humanized antibody of Claim 1, wherein said antibody contains a humanized variable light sequence selected from the following group:

- 5 (1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITTC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVITTC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- 10 (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK,

and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantially affect the ability of the resultant humanized  
15 antibody to bind the gp39 antigen.

8. The humanized antibody of Claim 1, wherein said antibody contains a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the group consisting of:

- 20 (1) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- (2) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

- 85 -

(3) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNNQFSLNLSVTRADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

5 (4) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCAVYGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYLLKSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS.

and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantially affect the ability of the resultant humanized antibody to bind the gp39 antigen.

10 9. The humanized antibody of Claim 1, which contains a humanized variable light sequence selected from the group consisting of the following group:

(1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVTITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

15 (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

(3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVTITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

20 (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK

and a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the following group:

(1) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

- 86 -

(2) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

(3) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNQFSLNLNSVTRADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

5

(4) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCVYSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYLLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS, and

and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more  
conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantial-  
10 ly affect the ability of the resultant humanized antibody to  
bind the gp39 antigen.

10. The humanized antibody of Claim 5, which contains  
humanized variable light sequence (1) and humanized variable  
heavy sequence (1).

15 11. The humanized antibody of Claim 5, which contains  
humanized variable light sequence (2) and humanized variable  
heavy sequence (1).

12. The humanized antibody of Claim 5, which contains  
humanized variable light sequence (1) and humanized variable  
20 heavy sequence (2).

13. The humanized antibody of Claim 5, which contains  
humanized variable light sequence (2) and humanized variable  
heavy sequence (2).

- 87 -

14. The humanized antibody of Claim 1, which contains the human kappa or lambda light chain constant region and either the human gamma 1 or gamma 4 heavy chain constant region.

15. A DNA sequence which encodes for a humanized antibody  
5 according to Claim 1.

16. An expression vector which contains a DNA sequence according to Claim 10.

17. A pharmaceutical composition which contains a humanized antibody derived from murine monoclonal antibody 24-31.

10 18. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 17, wherein said humanized antibody contains a humanized variable light sequence selected from the following group:

(1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITTC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

15 (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

(3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVITTC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

20 (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK.

- 88 -

and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantially affect the ability of the resultant humanized antibody to bind the gp39 antigen.

5           19. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 18, wherein said humanized antibody contains a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the following group:

- (1) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WQGGTTLTVSS;
- 10       (2) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLTLCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WQGGTTLTVSS;
- (3) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLTLCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WQGGTTLTVSS;
- 15       (4) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCAVYGSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WQGGTTLTVSS,

and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantially affect the ability of the resultant humanized antibody to  
20 bind the gp39 antigen.

20       20 The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 17, wherein said humanized antibody contains a humanized variable light sequence selected from the following group:

- 89 -

- (1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- 5 (3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK

and a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the  
10 following group:

- (1) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- (2) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- 15 (3) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNQFSLNLSVTRADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- (4) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSSETLSLTCAVYGDST NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS,

20 and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more  
conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantial-  
ly affect the ability of the resultant humanized antibody to  
bind the gp39 antigen.

- 90 -

21. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 20, wherein the humanized antibody contains humanized variable light sequence (1) and variable heavy sequence (1).

22. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 20, wherein  
5 the antibody contains humanized variable light sequence (2) and humanized variable heavy sequence (1).

23. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 20, which contains humanized variable light sequence (1) and humanized variable heavy sequence (2).

10 24. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 20, which contains humanized variable light sequence (2) and humanized variable heavy sequence (2).

25. A method of treatment of a disease treatable by modulating gp39 expression or inhibiting the gp39/CD40 interaction which comprises administering a therapeutically effective  
15 amount of a humanized antibody according to Claim 1.

26. The method of Claim 25, wherein said disease is an autoimmune disorder.

27. The method of Claim 21, wherein said autoimmune  
20 disorder is selected from the group consisting of rheumatoid arthritis, psoriasis multiple sclerosis, diabetes, systemic lupus erythematosus and ITP.



- 91 -

28. The method of Claim 25, wherein the disease is a non-autoimmune disorder.

29. The method of Claim 27, wherein the disease is graft-versus-host disease or graft rejection.

5        30. A method of suppressing humoral and/or cellular immune responses against cells or vectors administered during cell or gene therapy comprising further administering prior, during or after gene therapy an amount of a humanized antibody derived from murine antibody 24-31 sufficient to suppress  
10 humoral and/or cellular immune responses against the cell or vector used during cell or gene therapy.

31. The method of Claim 30, wherein the vector is a viral vector, a DNA or an antisense RNA.

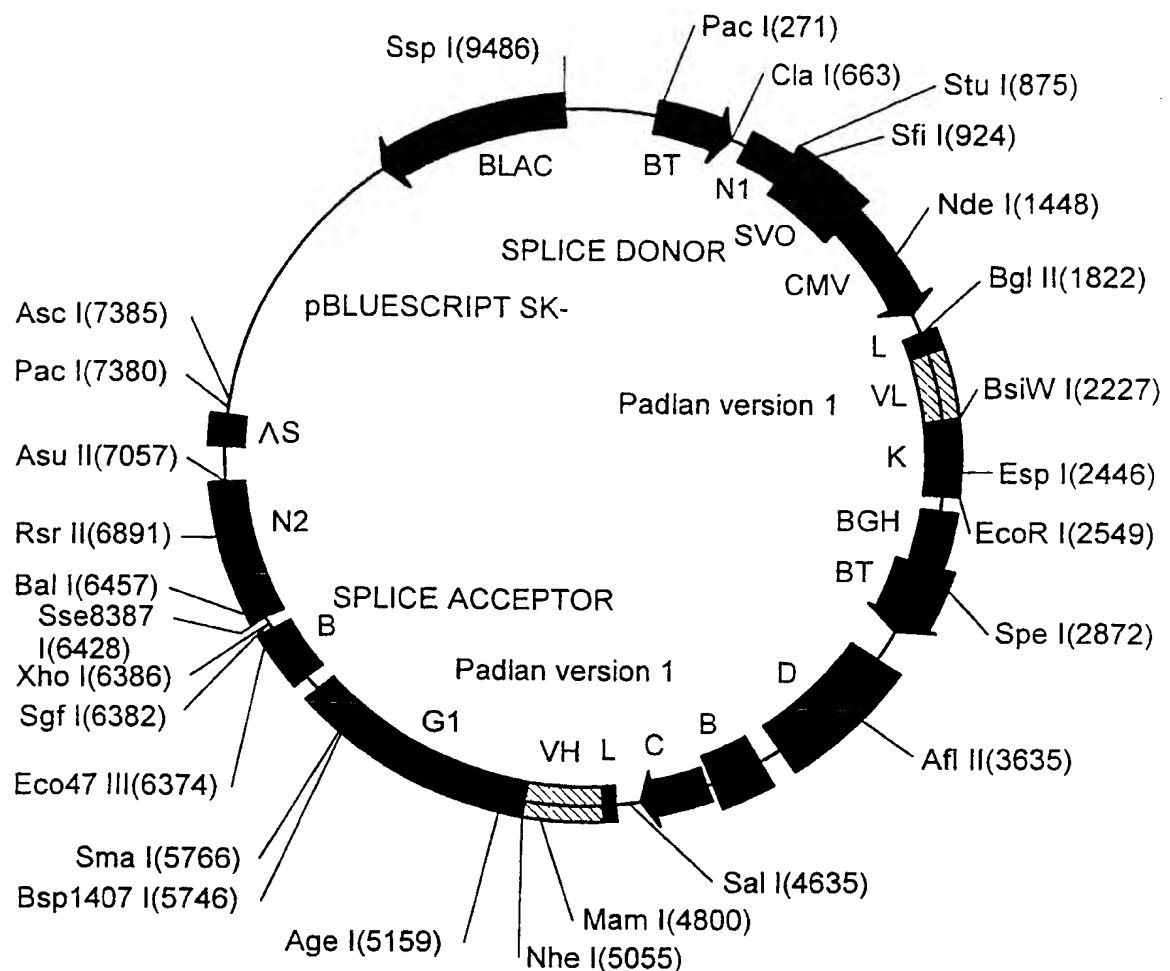
32. The method of Claim 31, wherein the viral vector is  
15 an adenovirus or retrovirus.

33. The method of Claim 30, wherein said humanized antibody contains a sequence set forth in at least one Figures 5-8.

34. An improved method of treatment which involves the  
20 transplantation of cells, tissues or organs of the same or different species into a subject in need of such treatment, wherein the improvement comprises administering a humanized anti-human gp39 antibody derived from murine antibody 24-31;

- 92 -

prior, during or after transplantation; in an amount sufficient to suppress immune responses against said transplanted cell, tissue or organ or to suppress immune responses elicited by the transplanted cell, tissue or organ against the host.

**FIG. 1****Anti-GP39 HU24-31 in N5KG1 (Version #1)**

9597 BP

Map BY Mitchell Raff

06/01/95

C = Cytomegalovirus promoter/enhancer

BT = Mouse Beta globin major promoter

B = Bovine growth hormone polyadenylation

N1 = Neomycin phosphotransferase exon 1

N2 = Neomycin phosphotransferase exon 2

K = Human immunoglobulin kappa constant region

G1 = Human immunoglobulin gamma 1 constant region

VL = Anti-GP39 variable light region (version #1)

VH = Anti-GP39 variable heavy region (version #1)

NONCUTTERS = AvrII, BstI 107I, DraIII, FseI, HindIII, I-PpoI, I-SceI,

KpnI, MluI, MunI, PmeI, PmlI, SgrAI, SrfI, SwaI, XbaI, XcmI

N5KG1 cut BglII + BsiWI and VL dropped in &amp; cut SalI + NheI and VH dropped in.

L = Leader

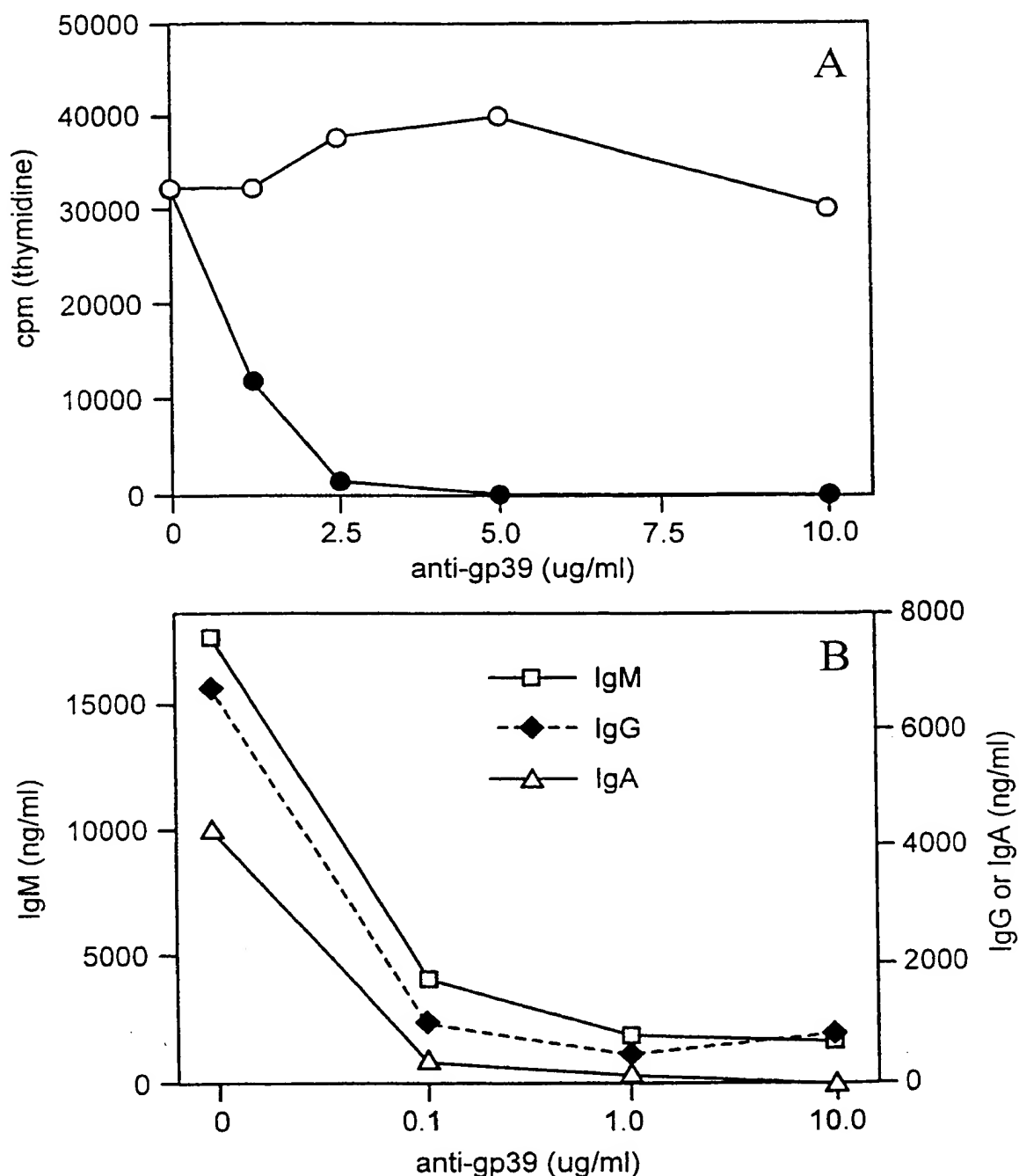
SVO = SV40 origin

SV = SV40 polyadenylation

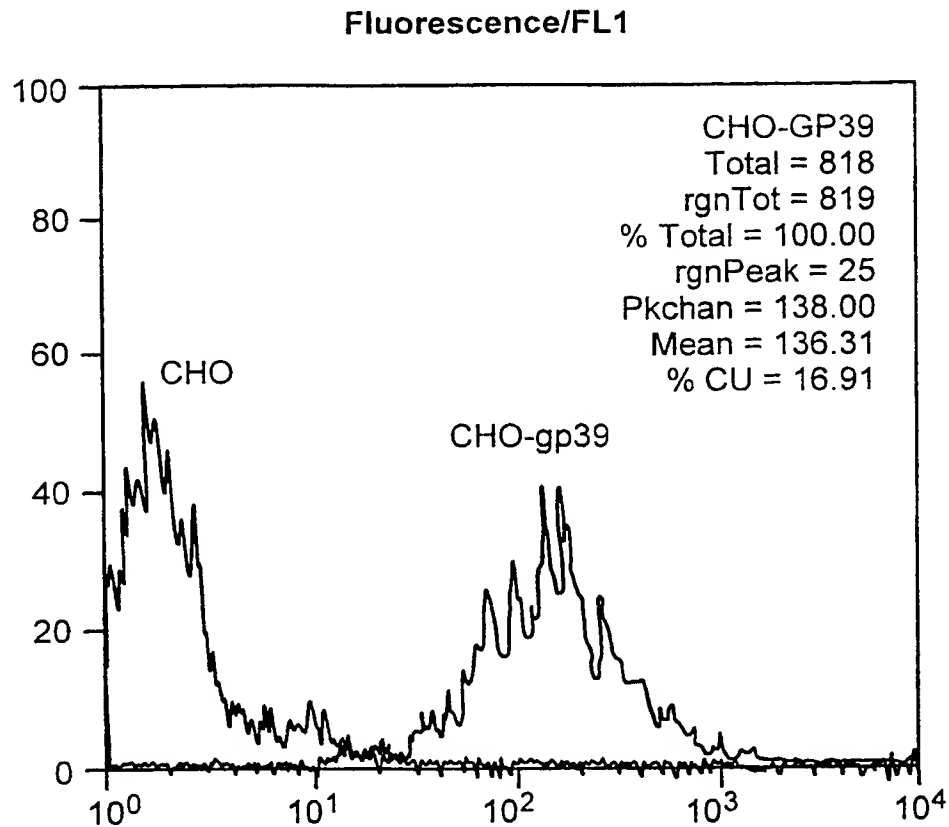
D = Dihydrofolate Reductase

BLAC = Betalactamase gene

## FIG. 2



Anti-gp39 inhibits B cell proliferation and differentiation, but not allogeneic T cell proliferation. A. Human PBL were cultured in 96 well plates ( $0.1 \times 10^6$ /well) in the presence or absence of the 20% (v/v) soluble gp39-CD8 (sgp39-CD8) fusion protein and 5 ug/ml rhIL-4 for 3 d. Anti-gp39 mAb, 24-31 (●), or a control murine IgG1 mAb (○), were added at a range of concentrations (1.25-10 ug/ml). Cultures with pulsed with 1 uCi  $^3$ H-thymidine during the final 6 hr of a 72 hr culture period. B. Mitomycin treated T cells ( $5 \times 10^4$ /well) activated with immobilized anti-CD3 (64.1) were cultured with  $2.5 \times 10^4$ /well IgD<sup>+</sup> B cells in 96-well microtiter plates for 12d in the presence or absence of various concentrations (0.1-10.0 ug/ml) of anti-gp39 mAb, 24-31. Culture supernatants were subsequently assayed for IgM (□), IgG (◆), and IgA (△) by isotype specific ELISA.

**FIG. 3**

FACS analysis of non-transfected CHO cells and a gp39 transfectant.  $1 \times 10^6$  cells were treated with the mouse anti-gp39 antibody 24-31 and then with a goat-anti-mouse IgG-FITC conjugate (Southern Biotechnology Associates). The samples were analyzed on FACScan (Becton Dickinson).

24-31 Humanized V<sub>L</sub> #1

5'	<u>BglIII</u>		9		18		27		36		45		54					
	AGA	TCT	CTC	ACC	ATG	GGC	TTC	AAG	ATG	GAG	TCA	CAG	TTT	CTG	GCC	TTT	GTA	TTC
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
					M	G	F	K	M	E	S	Q	F	L	A	F	V	F
	63		72		81		FR1		90		99		108					
	GCG	TTT	CTC	TGG	TTG	TCT	GGT	GTT	GAT	GGA	GAC	ATT	GTG	ATG	ACC	CAG	TCT	CCA
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	A	F	L	W	L	S	G	V	D	G	D	I	V	M	T	Q	S	P
	117		126		135		144		153		CDR1		162					
	TCT	TTT	CTC	TCC	GCC	TCC	GTA	GGA	GAC	AGG	GTC	ACC	ATC	ACC	TGC	AAG	GCC	AGT
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	S	F	L	S	A	S	V	G	D	R	V	T	I	T	C	K	A	S
	171		180		189		FR2		198		207		216					
	CAG	AAT	GTG	ATT	ACT	GCT	GTA	GCC	TGG	TAT	CAA	CAG	AAA	CCA	GGA	AAG	TCT	CCT
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	Q	N	V	I	T	A	V	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	P	G	K	S	P
	225		234		CDR2		243		252		FR3		261		270			
	AAA	TTG	CTG	ATT	TAC	TCG	GCA	TCC	AAT	CGG	TAC	ACT	GGA	GTC	CCT	GAT	CGC	TTC
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	K	L	L	I	Y	S	A	S	N	R	Y	T	G	V	P	D	R	F
	279		288		297		306		315		324							
	TCA	GGC	AGT	GGG	TCT	GGG	ACA	GAT	TTC	ACT	CTC	ACC	ATC	AGC	TCT	CTC	CAG	CCA
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	S	S	L	Q	P
	333		342		351		CDR3		360		369		378					
	GAA	GAC	TTC	GCA	GAT	TAT	TTC	TGC	CAG	CAA	TAT	AAC	AGC	TAT	CCG	TAC	ACG	TTC
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	E	D	F	A	D	Y	F	C	Q	Q	Y	N	S	Y	P	Y	T	F
	FR4		387		396		405		<u>BsiWI</u>		3'							
	GGA	GGG	GGG	ACC	AAG	CTG	GAA	ATC	AAA	CGT	ACG							
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---							
	G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	R	T							

FIGURE 4

24-31 Humanized V<sub>L</sub> #2

5'	<u>BglIII</u>				9					18					27					36					45					54
	AGA	TCT	CTC	ACC		ATG	GGC	TTC	AAG	ATG	GAG	TCA	CAG	TTT	CTG	GCC	TTT	GTA	TTC											
						M	G	F	K	M	E	S	Q	F	L	A	F	V	F											
					63					72					81					90	FR1				99					108
	GCG	TTT	CTC	TGG	TTG	TCT	GGT	GTT	GAT	GGA	GAC	ATT	GTG	ATG	ACC	CAG	TCT	CCA												
	A	F	L	W	L	S	G	V	D	G	D	I	V	M	T	Q	S	P												
					117					126					135					144					153	CDR1				162
	GAT	TCT	CTC	GCC	GTG	TCC	CTC	GGA	GAG	AGG	GCC	ACC	ATC	AAC	TGC	AAG	GCC	AGT												
	D	S	L	A	V	S	L	G	E	R	A	T	I	N	C	K	A	S												
					171					180					189	FR2				198					207					216
	CAG	AAT	GTG	ATT	ACT	GCT	GTA	GCC	TGG	TAT	CAA	CAG	AAA	CCA	GGA	CAA	TCT	CCT												
	Q	N	V	I	T	A	V	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	P	G	Q	S	P												
					225					234	CDR2				243					252	FR3				261					270
	AAA	TTG	CTG	ATT	TAC	TCG	GCA	TCC	AAT	CGG	TAC	ACT	GGA	GTC	CCT	GAT	CGC	TTC												
	K	L	L	I	Y	S	A	S	N	R	Y	T	G	V	P	D	R	F												
					279					288					297					306					315					324
	TCA	GGC	AGT	GGG	TCT	GGG	ACA	GAT	TTC	ACT	CTC	ACC	ATC	AGC	TCT	CTC	CAG	GCC												
	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	S	S	L	Q	A												
					333					342					351	CDR3				360					369					378
	GAA	GAC	GTG	GCA	GAT	TAT	TTC	TGC	CAG	CAA	TAT	AAC	AGC	TAT	CCG	TAC	ACG	TTC												
	E	D	V	A	D	Y	F	C	Q	Q	Y	N	S	Y	P	Y	T	F												
					FR4	387					396					405	<u>BsiWI</u>													
	GGA	GGG	GGG	ACC	AAG	CTG	GAA	ATC	AAA	CGT	ACG	3'																		
	G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	R	T																			

FIGURE 5

24-31 Humanized V<sub>H</sub> #1

5'	SalI		9			18			27			36			45			54		
	GTC	GAC	ATG	ATG	GTG	TTA	AGT	CTT	CTG	TAC	CTG	TTG	ACA	GCC	CTT	CCG	GGT	TTC		
			M	M	V	L	S	L	L	Y	L	L	T	A	L	P	G	F		
	CTG	TCA	63 FR1			72			81			90			99			108		
			GAG	GTG	CAG	CTT	CAG	GAG	TCA	GGA	CCT	GGC	CTC	GTG	AAA	CCT	TCT	GAG		
	L	S	E	V	Q	L	Q	E	S	G	P	G	L	V	K	P	S	E		
	ACT	CTG	117			126			135			144			153 CDR1			162		
			TCC	CTC	ACC	TGT	ACC	GTC	TCT	GGC	GAC	TCC	ATC	ACT	AAT	GGT	TTC	TGG		
	T	L	S	L	T	C	T	V	S	G	D	S	I	T	N	G	F	W		
	ATC	TGG	171 FR2			180			189			198			207 CDR2			216		
			ATC	CGG	AAA	CCA	CCA	GGG	AAT	AAA	CTT	GAG	TAC	ATG	GGC	TAC	ATA	AGT		
	I	W	I	R	K	P	P	G	N	K	L	E	Y	M	G	Y	I	S		
	TAC	AGT	225			234			243			252			261 FR3			270		
			GGT	AGC	ACT	TAC	TAC	AAT	CCA	TCT	CTC	AAG	AGT	CGA	ATC	TCC	ATC	TCT		
	Y	S	G	S	T	Y	Y	N	P	S	L	K	S	R	I	S	I	S		
	CGC	GAC	279			288			297			306			315			324		
			ACA	TCC	AAG	AAC	CAG	TTC	TCT	CTA	AAG	TTG	TCT	TCT	GTG	ACT	GCC	GCC		
	R	D	T	S	K	N	Q	F	S	L	K	L	S	S	V	T	A	A		
	GAC	ACA	333			342			351			CDR3			360			369		
			GGC	GTG	TAT	TAC	TGT	GCC	TGC	CGC	AGT	TAC	GGG	AGG	ACC	CCG	TAC	TAC		
	D	T	G	V	Y	Y	C	A	C	R	S	Y	G	R	T	P	Y	Y		
	TTT	GAC	387			FR4			396			405			414			NheI		
			TTC	TGG	GGC	CAA	GGC	ACC	ACT	CTC	ACC	GTC	TCC	TCA	GCT	AGC	3'			
	F	D	F	W	G	Q	G	T	T	L	T	V	S	S	A	S				

FIGURE 6



Anti-gp39 24-31 V<sub>K</sub> Sequence

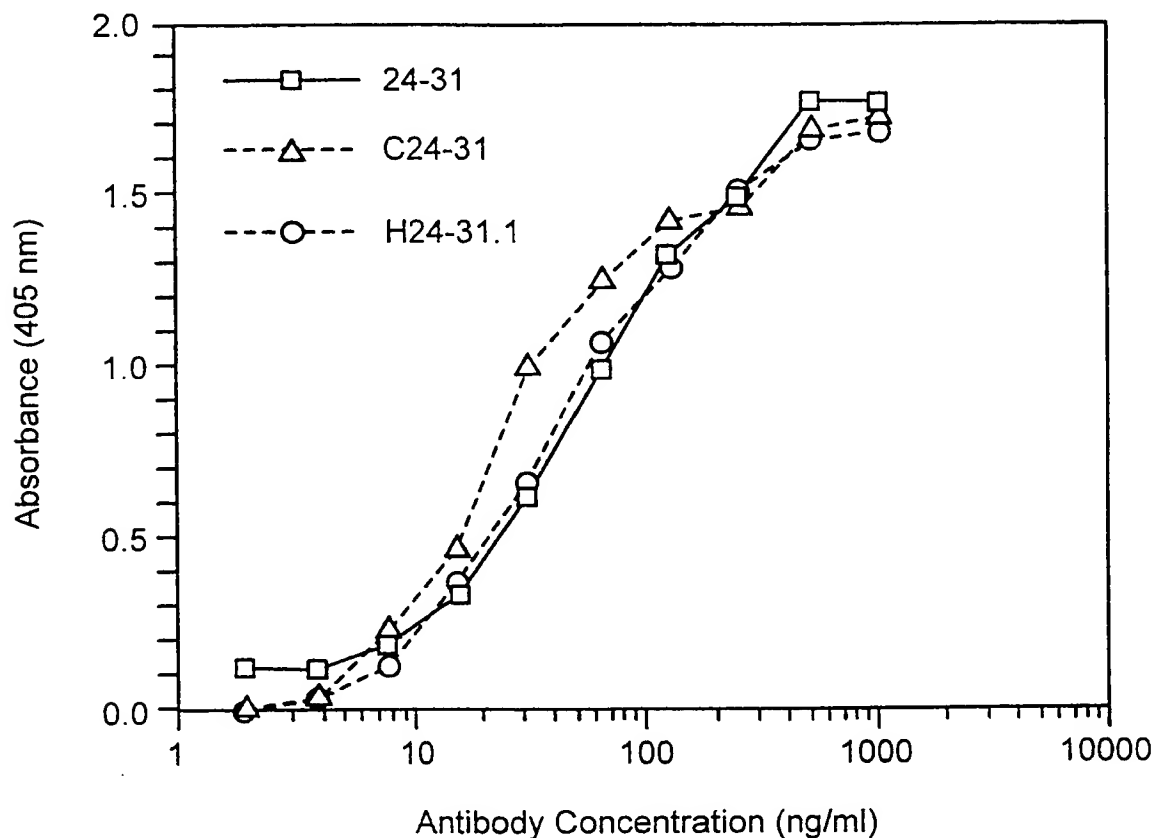
Bgl II																		
5'	AGA	TCT	CTC	ACC	ATG	GGC	TTC	AAG	ATG	GAG	TCA	CAG	TTT	CTG	GCC	TTT	GTA	TTC
					M	G	F	K	M	E	S	Q	F	L	A	F	V	F
	GCG	TTT	CTC	TGG	TTG	TCT	GGT	GTT	GAT	GGA	+1	90	FRI		99		108	
	A	F	L	W	L	S	G	V	D	G	D	I	V	M	T	Q	S	Q
	AAA	TTC	ATG	TCC	ACA	TCC	GTA	GGA	GAC	AGG	GTC	AGC	ATC	ACC	TGC	CDR1	162	
	K	F	M	S	T	S	V	G	D	R	V	S	I	T	C	AAG	GCC	AGT
																K	A	S
	CAG	AAT	GTG	ATT	ACT	GCT	GTA	GCC	189	FR2	198		207		216			
	Q	N	V	I	T	A	V	A	TGG	TAT	CAA	CAG	AAA	CCA	GGA	CAA	TCT	CCT
									W	Y	Q	Q	K	P	G	Q	S	P
	AAA	TTG	CTG	ATT	TAC	234	CDR2	243		252	FR3	261		270				
	K	L	L	I	Y	TCG	GCA	TCC	AAT	CGG	TAC	ACT	GGA	GTC	CCT	GAT	CGC	TTC
						S	A	S	N	R	Y	T	G	V	P	D	R	F
	TCA	GGC	AGT	GGG	TCT	288		297		306		315		324				
	S	G	S	G	S	GGG	ACA	GAT	TTC	ACT	CTC	ACC	ATC	AGC	AAT	ATG	CAG	TCT
						G	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	S	N	M	Q	S
	GAA	GAC	CTG	GCA	GAT	TAT	TTC	TGC	351	CDR3	360		369		378			
	E	D	L	A	D	TAT	TTC	TGC	CAG	CAA	TAT	AAC	AGC	TAT	CCG	TAC	ACG	TTC
						Y	F	C	Q	Q	Y	N	S	Y	P	Y	T	F
	FR4	387		396		405	Bsi WI											
	GGA	GGG	GGG	ACC	AAG	CTG	GAA	ATC	AAA	CGT	ACG	3'						
	G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	R	T							

FIGURE 7

Anti gp39 24-31 V<sub>H</sub> Sequence

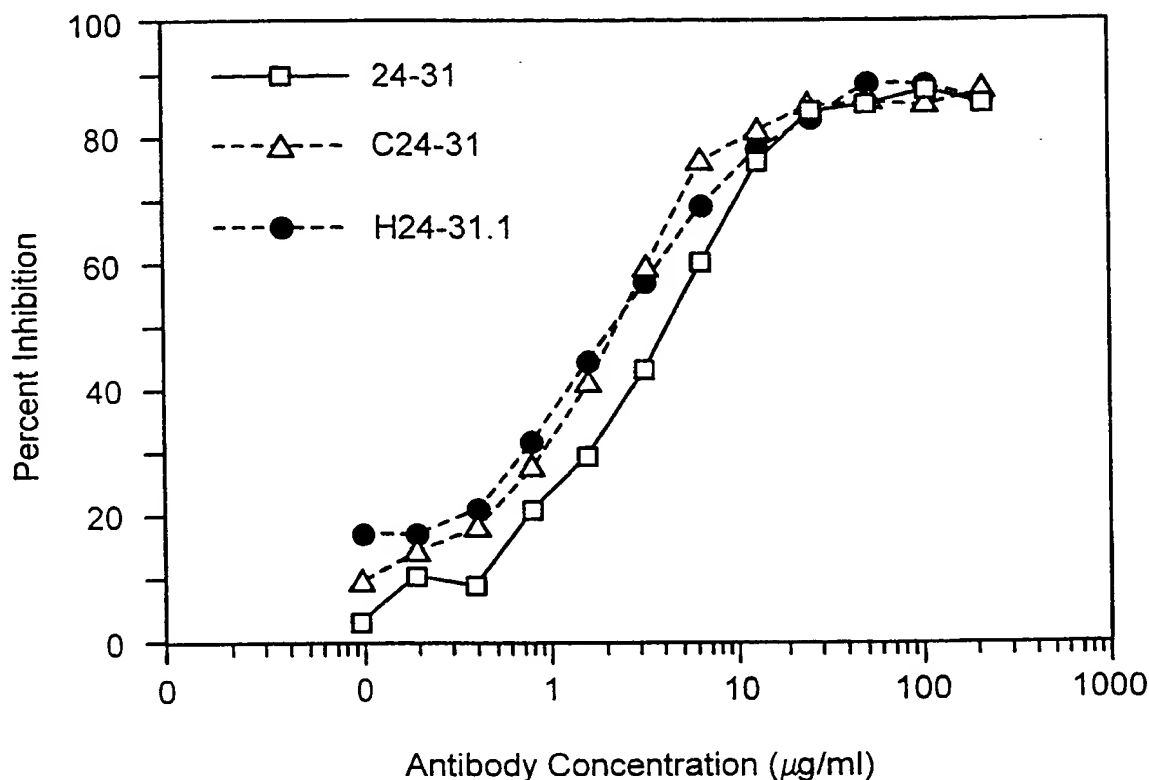
5'	SalI		9			18			27			36			45			54								
	GTC	GAC	ATG	ATG	GTG	TTA	AGT	CTT	CTG	TAC	CTG	TTG	ACA	GCC	CTT	CCG	GGT	TTC								
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---								
			M	M	V	L	S	L	L	Y	L	L	T	A	L	P	G	F								
			+1			63			FRI			72			81			90			99			108		
	CTG	TCA	GAG	GTG	CAG	CTT	CAG	GAG	TCA	GGA	CCT	AGC	CTC	GTG	AAA	CCT	TCT	CAG								
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---								
	L	S	E	V	Q	L	Q	E	S	G	P	S	L	V	K	P	S	Q								
			117			126			135			144			153			CDR1			162					
	ACT	CTG	TCC	CTC	ACC	TGT	TCT	GTC	ACT	GGC	GAC	TCC	ATC	ACT	AAT	GGT	TTC	TGG								
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---								
	T	L	S	L	T	C	S	V	T	G	D	S	I	T	N	G	F	W								
			171			FR2			180			189			198			207			CDR2			216		
	ATC	TGG	ATC	CGG	AAA	TTC	CCA	GGG	AAT	AAA	CTT	GAG	TAC	ATG	GGC	TAC	ATA	AGT								
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---								
	I	W	I	R	K	F	P	G	N	K	L	E	Y	M	G	Y	I	S								
			225			234			243			252			261			FR3			270					
	TAC	AGT	GGT	AGC	ACT	TAC	TAC	AAT	CCA	TCT	CTC	AAG	AGT	CGA	ATC	TCC	ATC	ACT								
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---								
	Y	S	G	S	T	Y	Y	N	P	S	L	K	S	R	I	S	I	T								
			279			288			297			306			315			324								
	CGC	GAC	ACA	TCC	CAG	AAC	CAG	TTC	TAC	CTA	CAA	TTG	AAT	TCT	GTG	ACT	ACT	GAG								
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---								
	R	D	T	S	Q	N	Q	F	Y	L	Q	L	N	S	V	T	T	E								
			333			342			351			CDR3			360			369			378					
	GAC	ACA	GGC	ACA	TAT	TAC	TGT	GCC	TGC	CGC	AGT	TAC	GGG	AGG	ACC	CCG	TAC	TAC								
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---								
	D	T	G	T	Y	Y	C	A	C	R	S	Y	G	R	T	P	Y	Y								
			387			FR4			396			405			414			423			NheI					
	TTT	GAC	TTC	TGG	GGC	CAA	GGC	ACC	ACT	CTC	ACC	GTC	TCC	TCA	GCT	AGC	3'									
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---									
	F	D	F	W	G	Q	G	T	T	L	T	V	S	S	A	S										

FIGURE 8

**FIG. 9****Direct Binding of Anti-gp39 Antibodies to mgp39 CHO Cells**

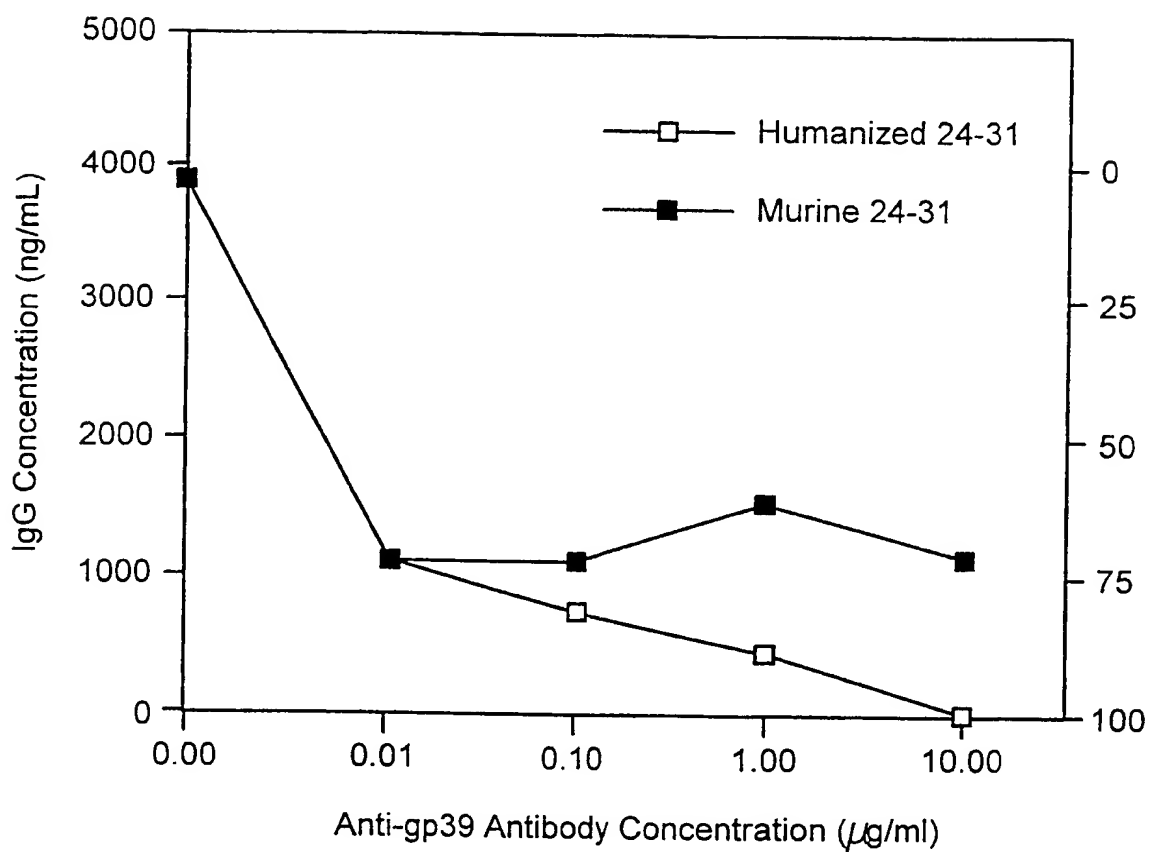
Fifty  $\mu$ l of 1  $\mu$ g/ml solution of each anti-gp39 antibody (murine, chimeric and humanized version 1 of 24-31) was added to wells containing poly-L-lysine fixed mgp39 CHO cells. After a 2 hour incubation, the bound antibodies were detected with either goat anti-human IgG HRP or goat anti-human IgG HRP or goat anti-mouse IgG HRP. The binding capacity of each antibody was compared on a plot of absorbance vs antibody concentration.

The figure shows that the half maximal binding in ELISA is achieved at similar concentrations for all three versions, at approximately 40 ng/ml.

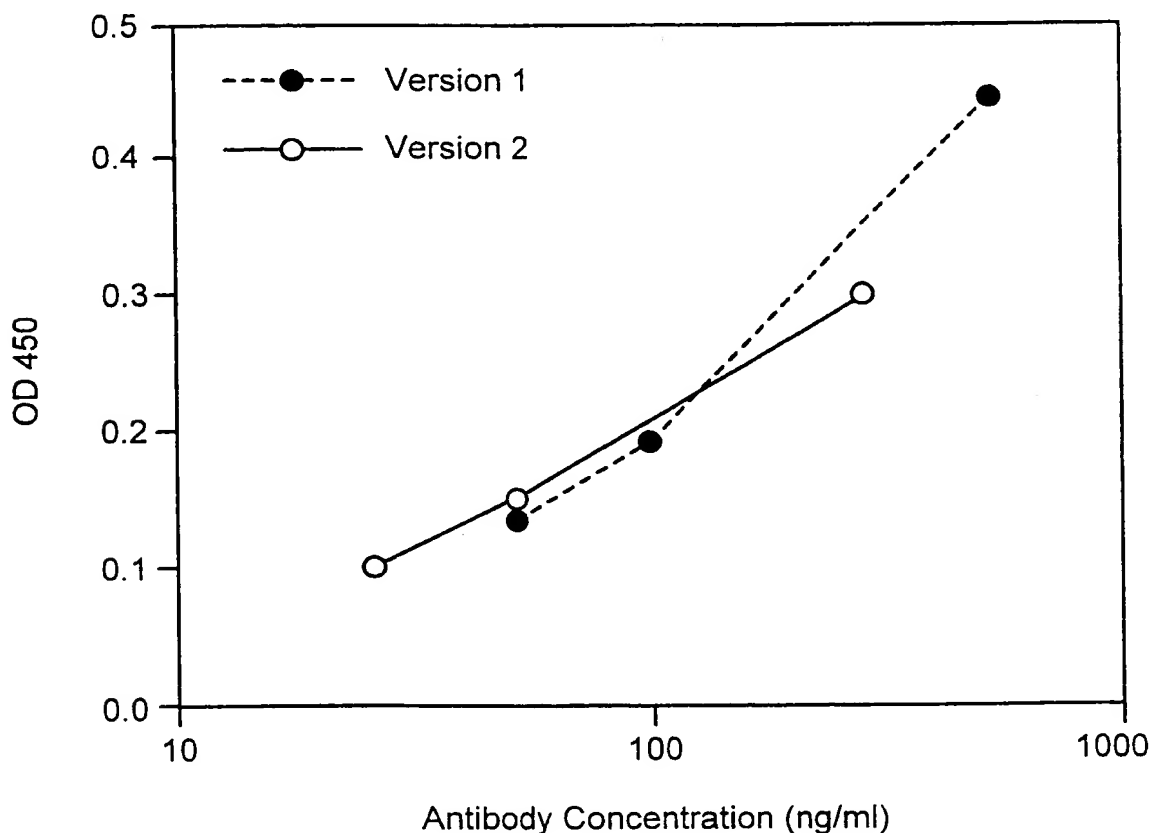
**FIG. 10****Competition Binding of 200 ng/ml Mouse Anti-gp39 Biotin  
with Anti-gp39 Antibodies on mgp39 CHO Cells**

The figure shows that competition for binding to gp39 between biotin labeled 24-31 and the mouse, chimeric and humanized versions 1 are comparable, possibly with the humanized version slightly better than the original antibody, with half-maximal competition at 2 and 4 μg/ml, respectively.

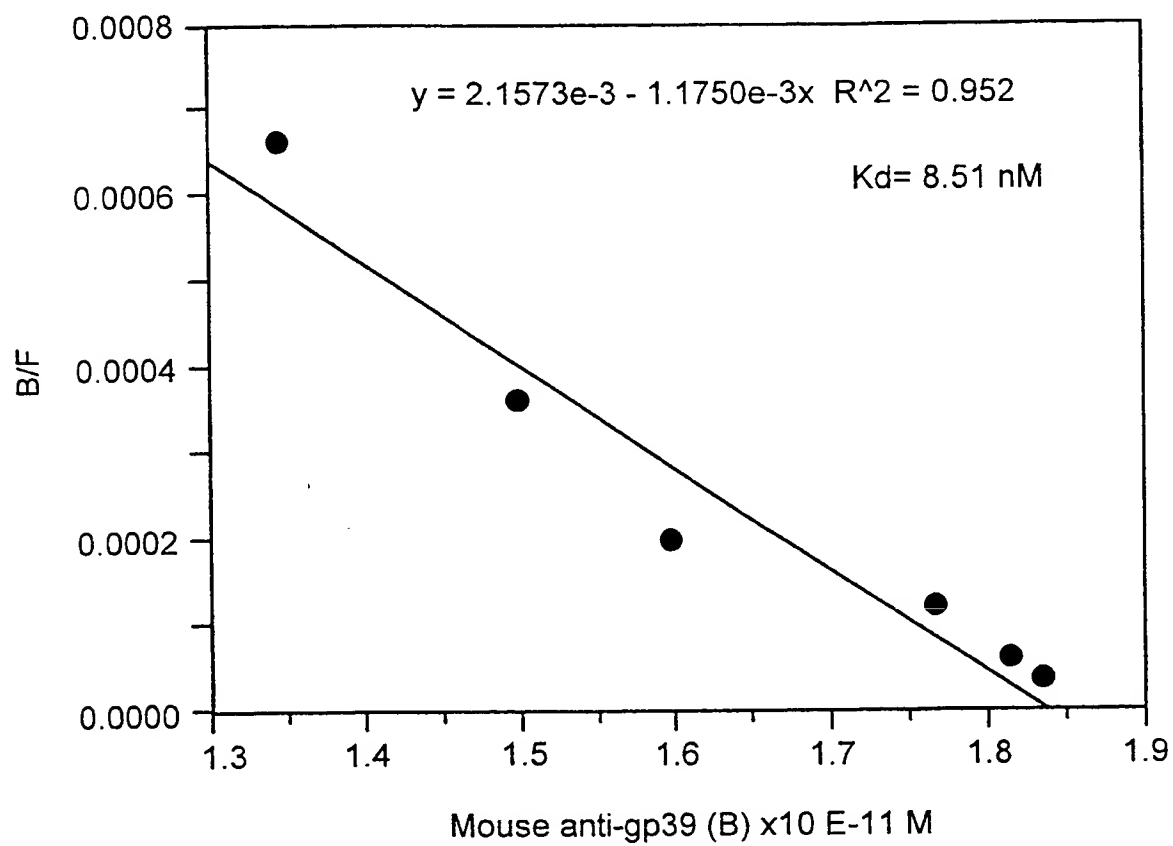
FIG. 11

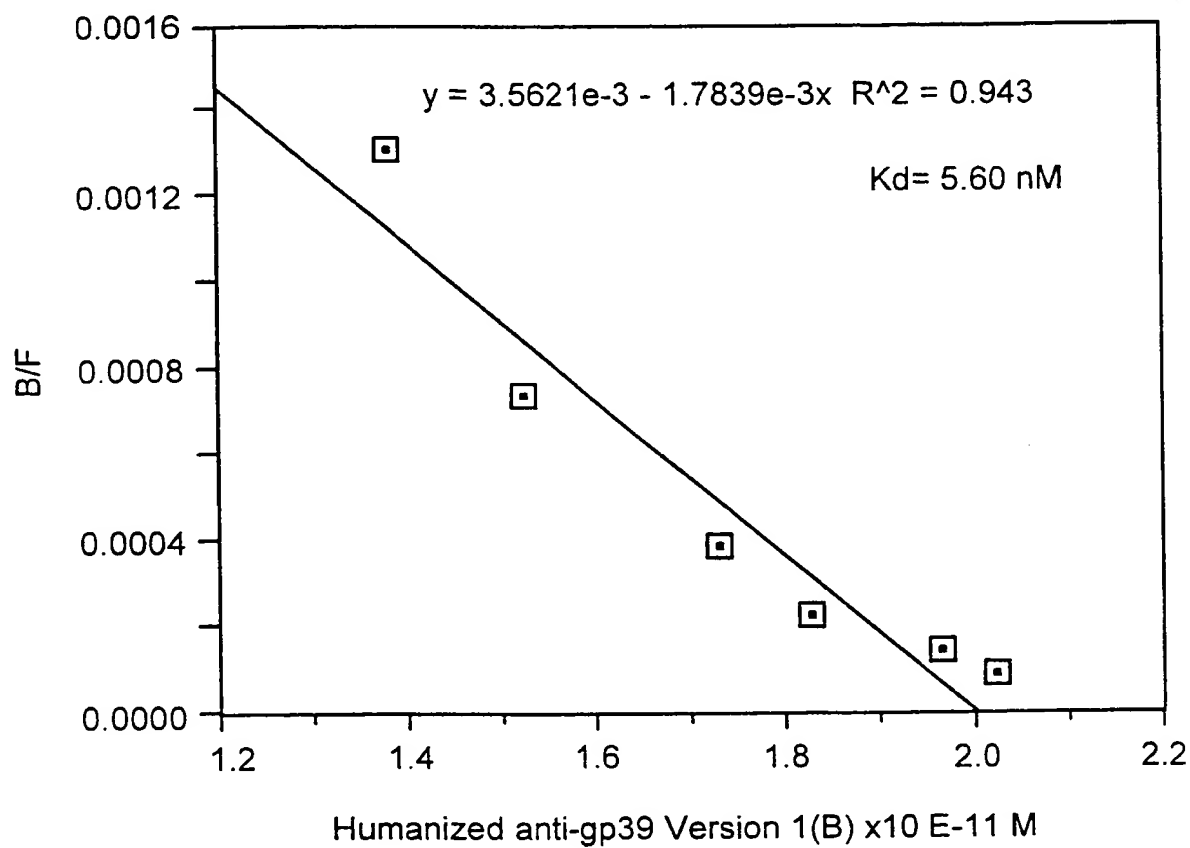


Purified, mitomycin C treated T cells were added into cell culture plates coated with anti-CD3 antibody. Autologous purified B cells were mixed with antibody at described concentrations and added to these plates in regular growth media. After 10 days the supernatant was tested for content of human IgM.

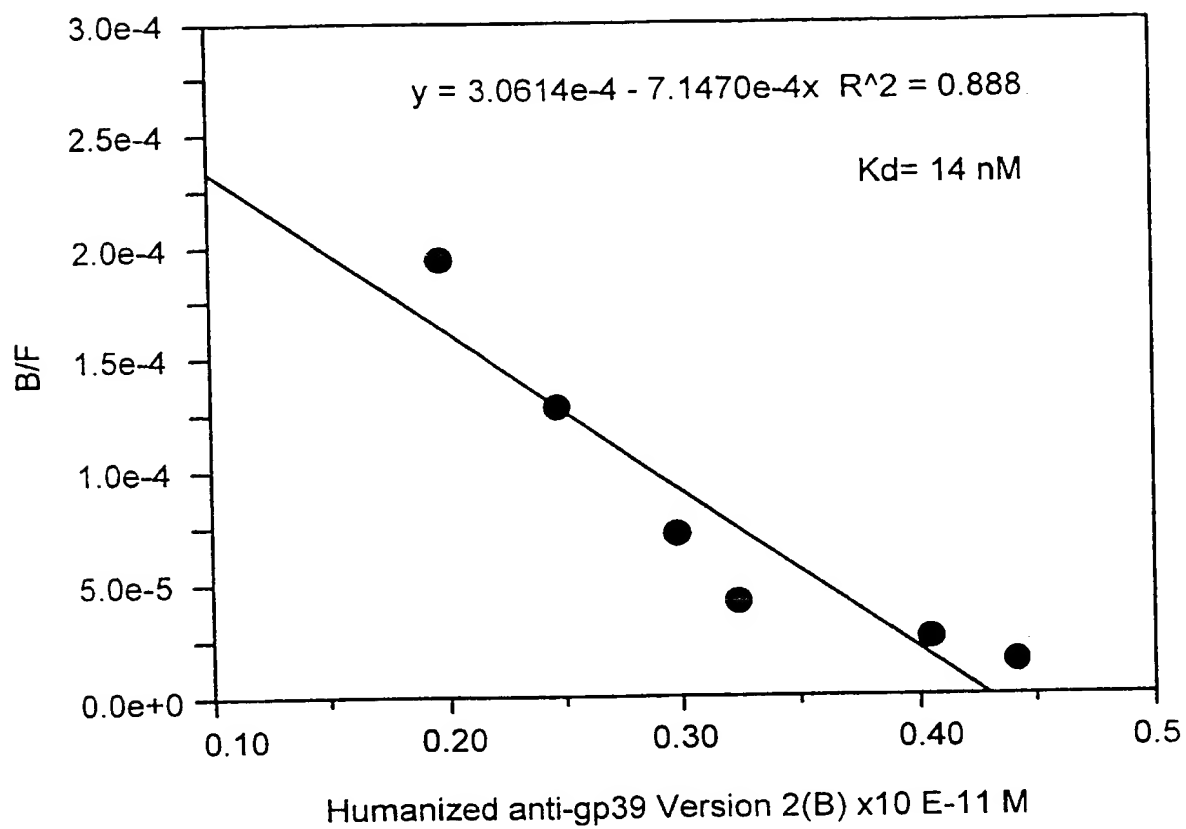
**FIG. 12**

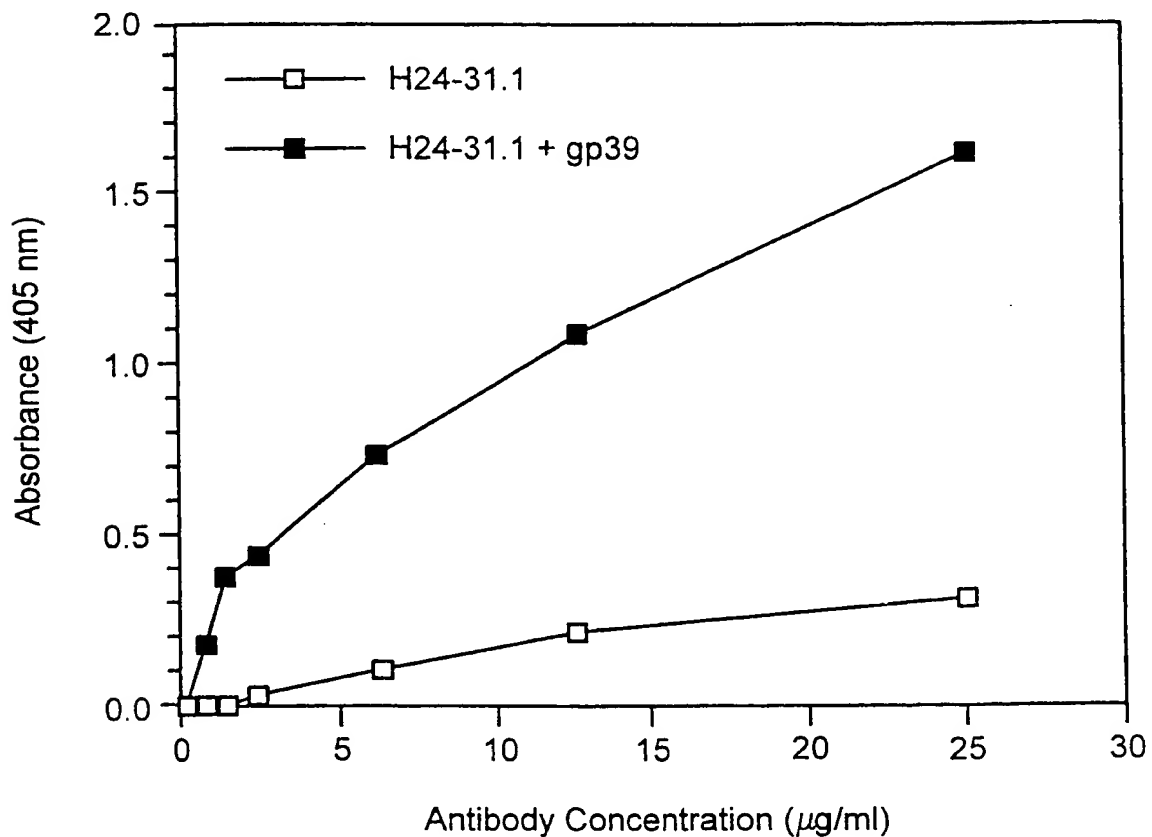
CHO cell supernatant containing humanized 24-31 version 1 and version 2 in unknown amounts, was incubated on mgp39-CHO cells for 2 hours. After a wash, the amount of bound antibody was determined. The same supernatants were tested in parallel on an ELISA plate coated with Goat  $\alpha$  Human  $\gamma$ , to determine the concentration of human IgG present relative to a control of known concentration. The binding data were normalized relative to the total antibody concentration.

**FIG. 13****Scatchard Analysis**

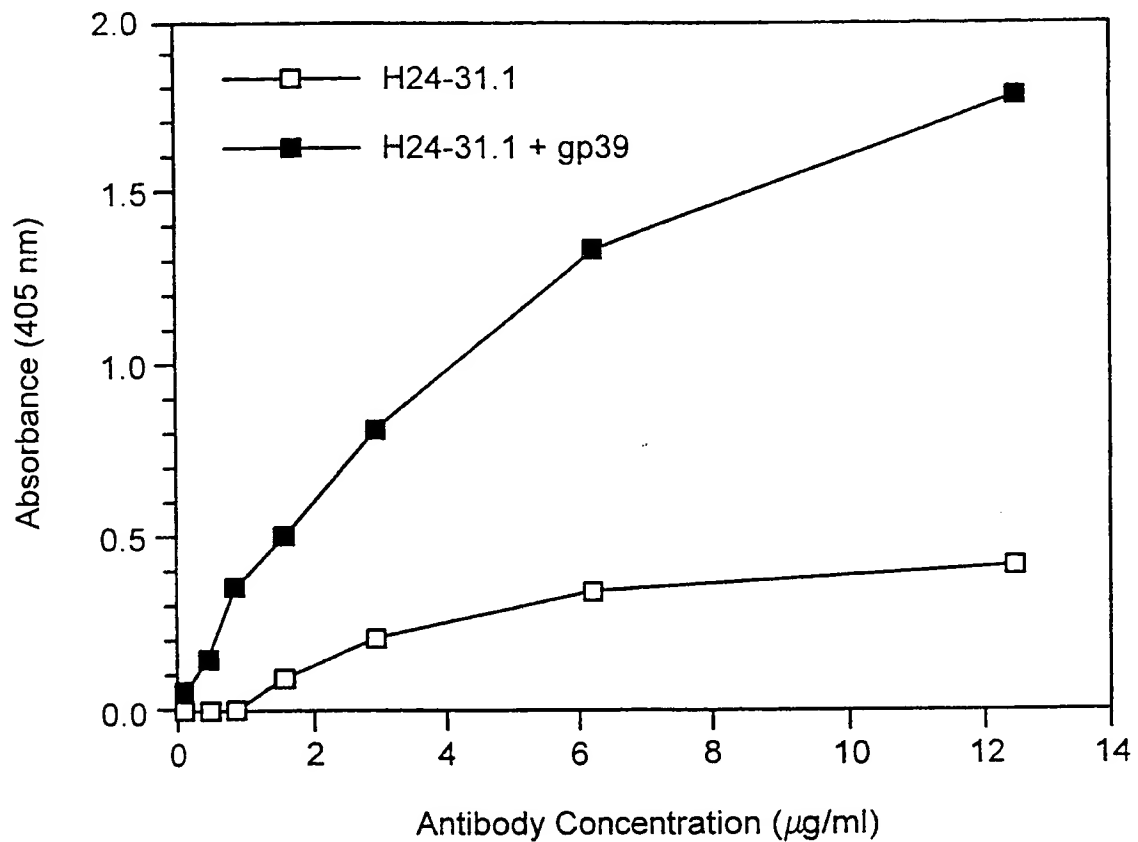
**FIG. 14****Scatchard Analysis**



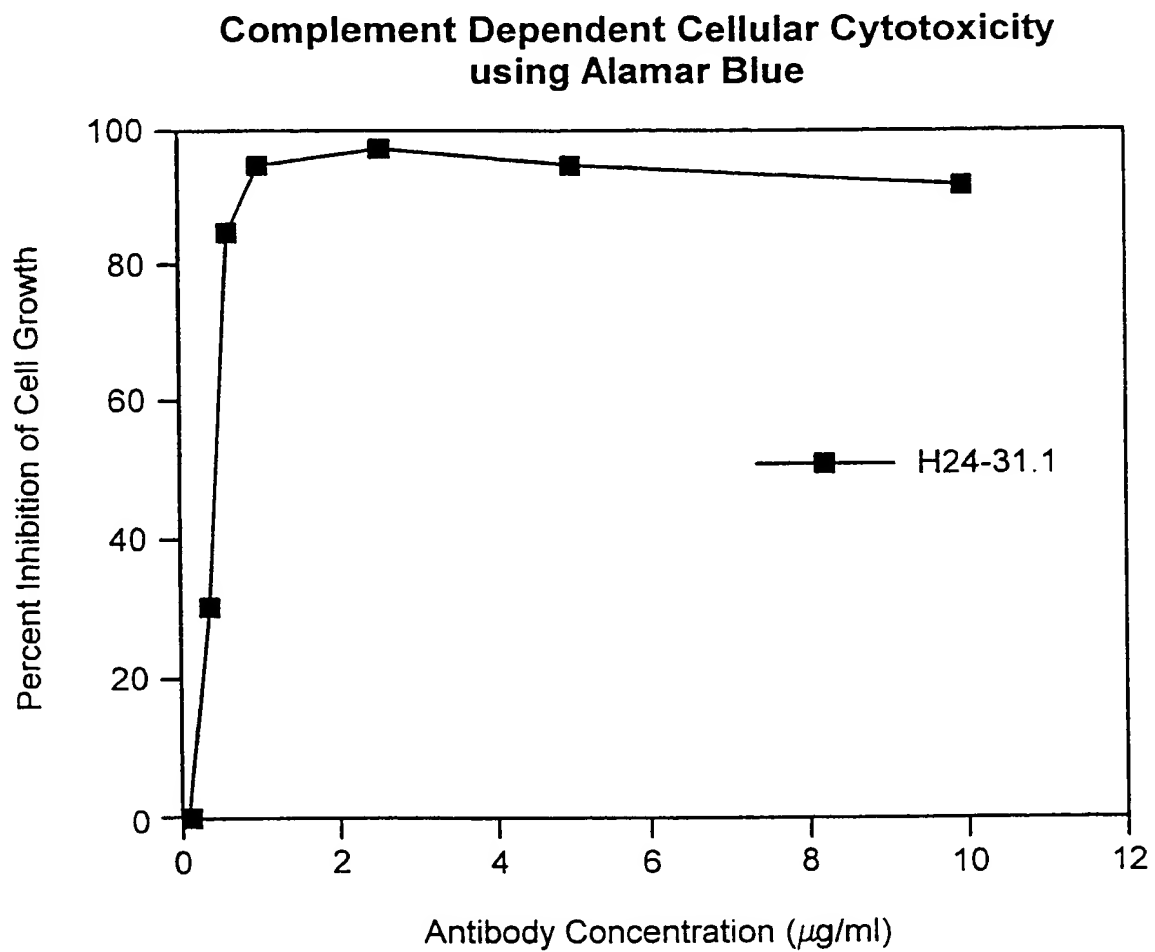
**FIG. 15****Scatchard Analysis**

**FIG. 16****FcRI Binding of H24-31.1 in the Presence  
of gp39-CD8 Fusion Protein**

The figure shows that H24-31.1 only binds Fc receptor I when complexed to antigen.

**FIG. 17****FcRII Binding of H24-31.1 in the Presence  
of gp39-CD8 Fusion Protein**

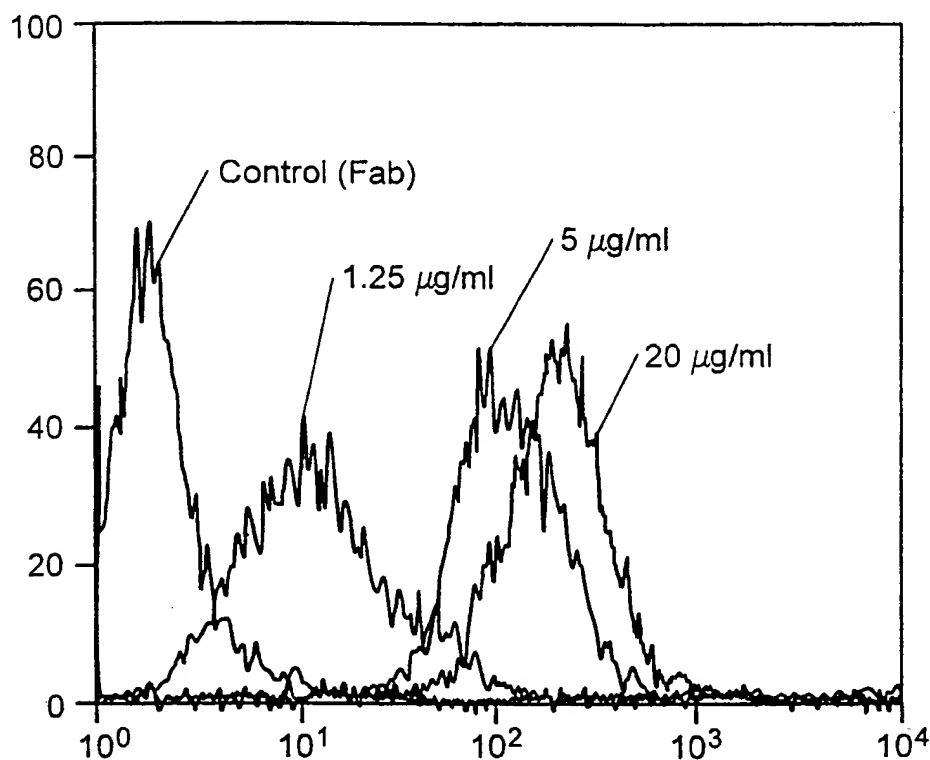
The figure shows that H24-31.1 only binds Fc receptor II when complexed to antigen.

**FIG. 18**

The figure shows that H24-31.1 inhibits 50% of cell growth at approximately 0.5  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ .

**FIG. 19****Determination of C1q binding of gp39+CHO bound H24-31.1  
(Humanized 24-31 version 1)**

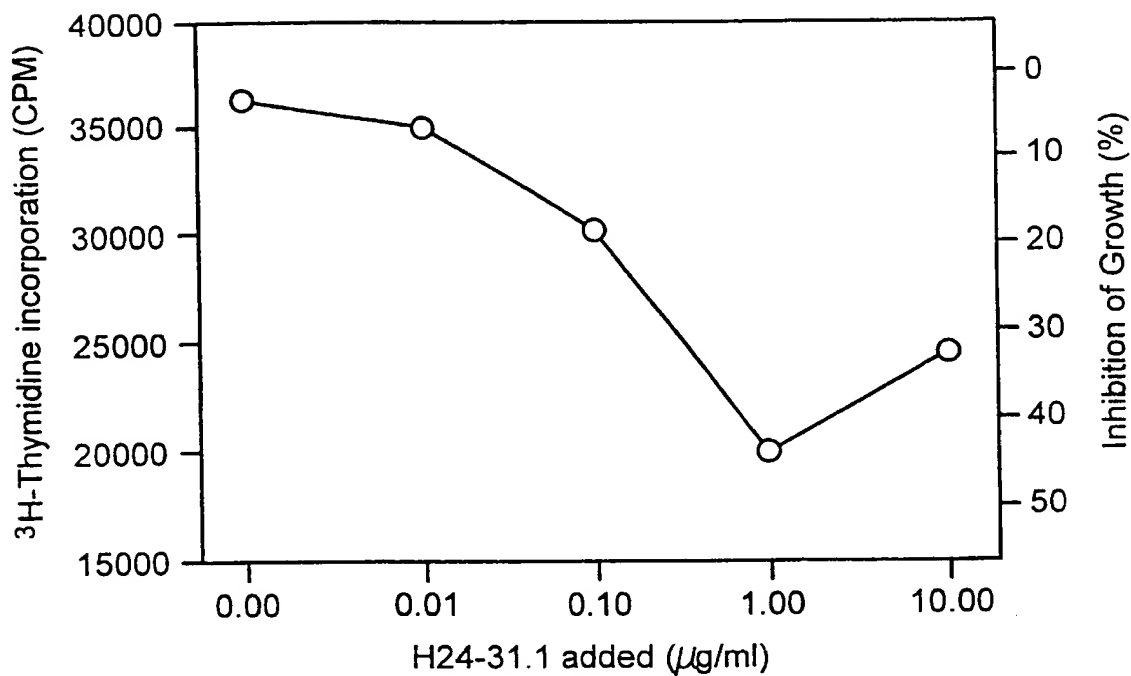
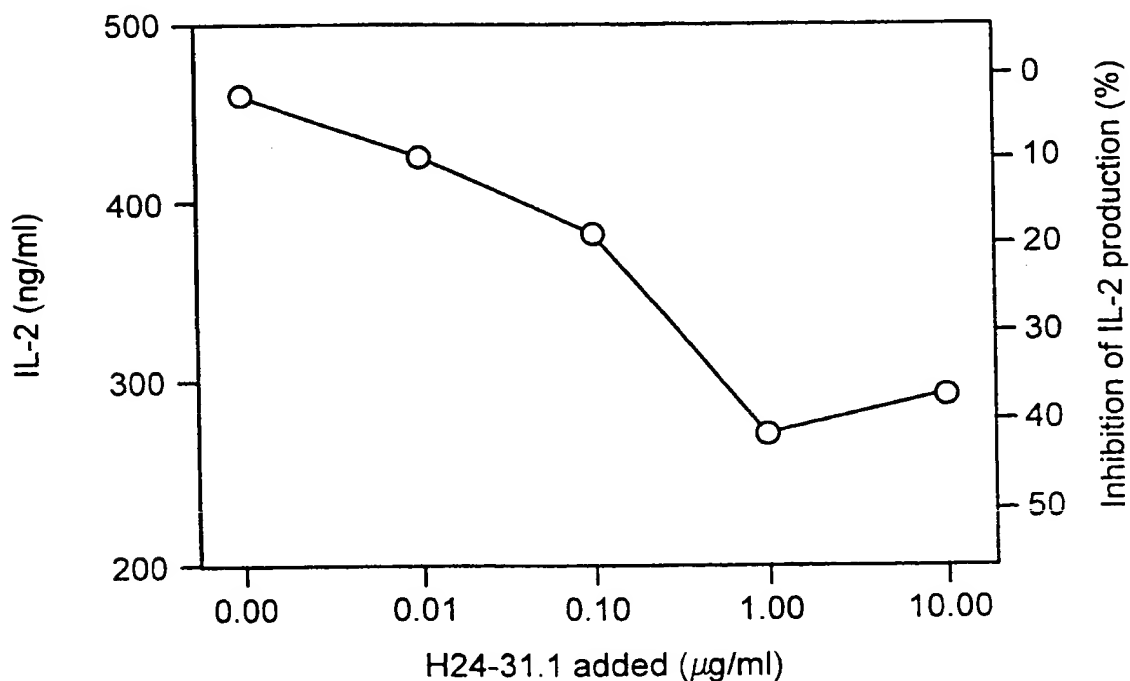
gp39+CHO cells labeled with various concentrations of H24-31.1 were incubated in an excess amount of human C1q (complement factor 1) and subsequently incubated with FITC labeled goat anti-human C1q. The samples were analyzed by flow cytometry to determine the relative labeling of the cells with C1q.

**C1q Binding of H24-31.1**

The figure shows that labeling of the cells with C1q was dependent on the antibody concentration, and that an H24-31.1 Fab fragment (no C1q binding) did not bind C1q.

**FIG. 20**

Effect of H24-31.1 on T cell responses to a T cell dependent recall antigen.

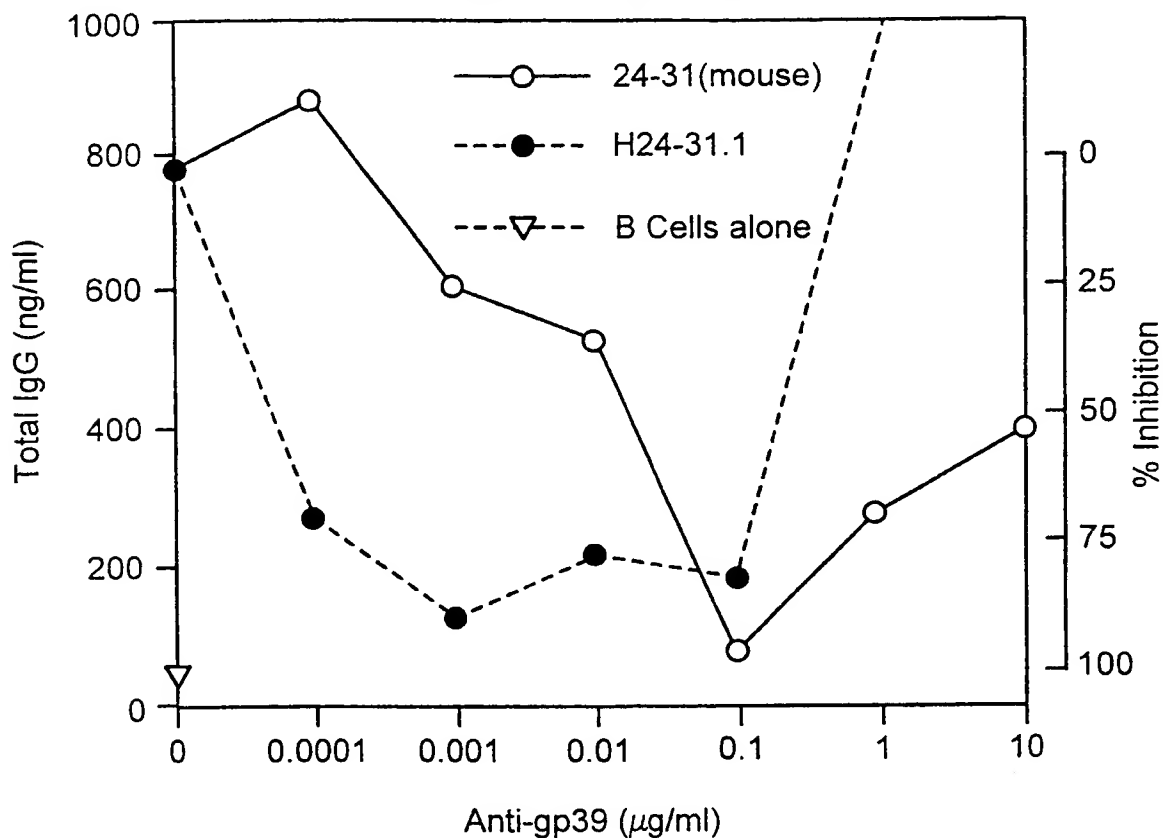
**Growth****IL-2 Production**

The figures show that TT induced growth and IL-2 production was inhibited maximally, around 40%, by  $\geq 1\mu\text{g/ml}$  H24-31.1.

**FIG. 21**

Effect of H24-31.1 on T cell dependent B cell differentiation.

**Inhibition of T Cell Dependent IgG Production by  
Anti-gp39 Antibodies**

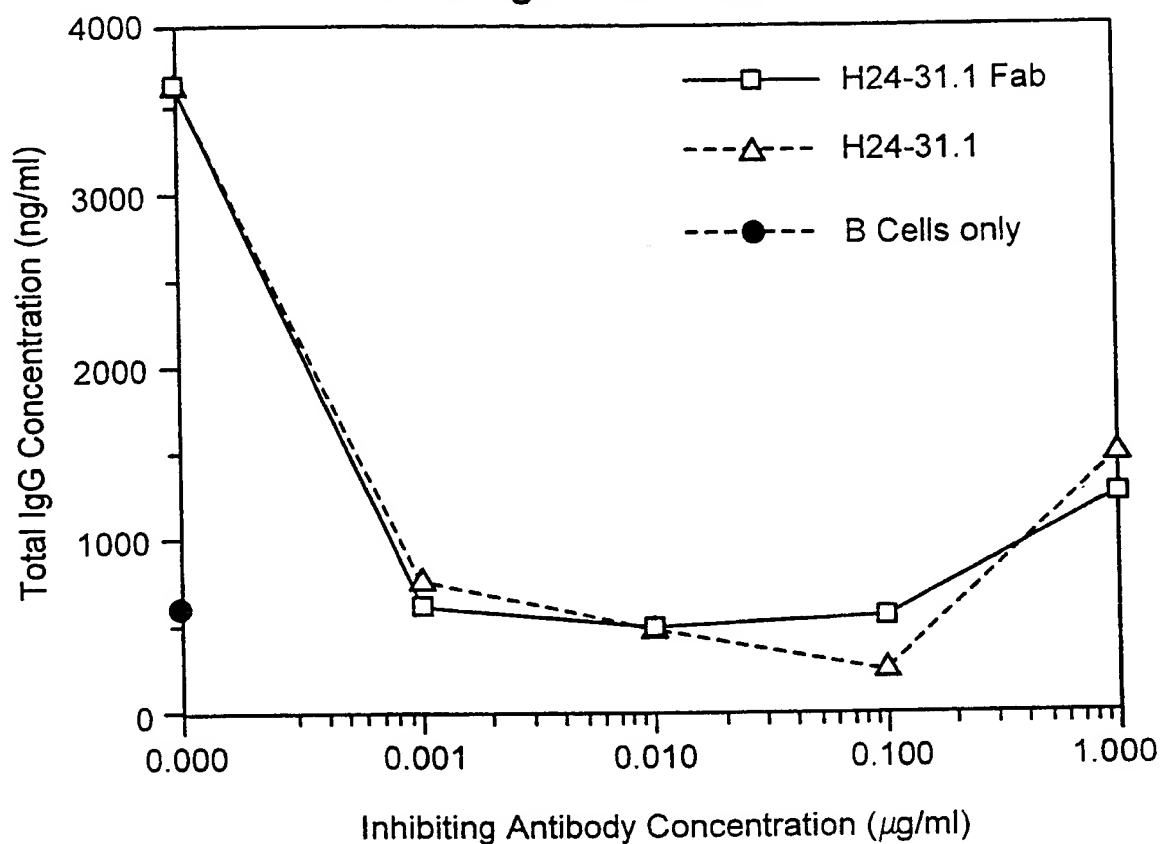


The figure shows that H24-31.1 inhibits T cell dependent IgG production approximately 85% at 1  $\text{ng/ml}$ . The apparent increase in IgG production seen at higher concentrations is due to the inability of this test to distinguish H24-31.1 from antibody produced by the B cells.

**FIG. 22**

Effect of H24-31.1 Fab on T cell dependent B cell differentiation.

**Anti-gp39 Antibody Inhibition of T Cell Dependent  
B Cell IgG Production**



The figure shows there was no difference in the inhibition of IgG production between the whole H24-31.1 antibody and the Fab fragment.

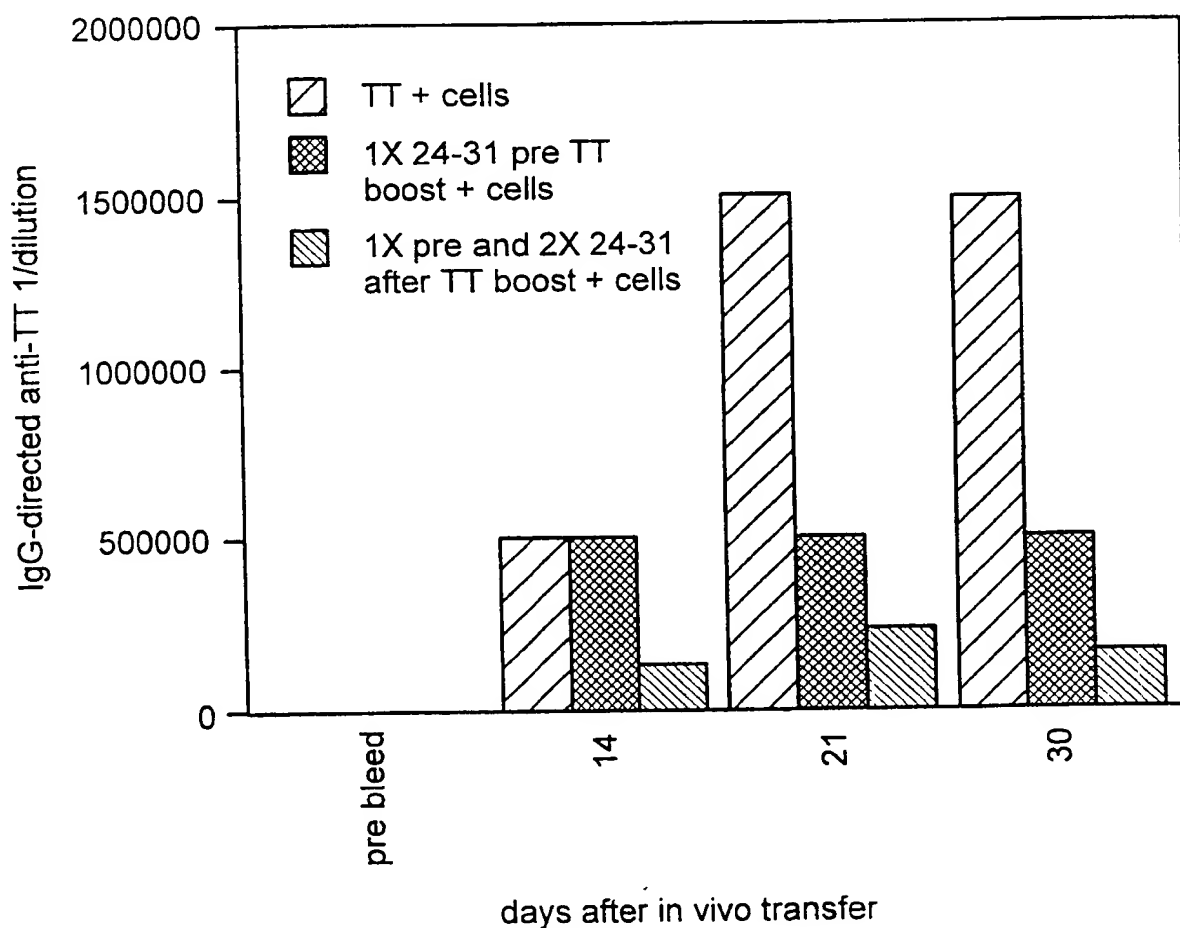


## FIG. 23

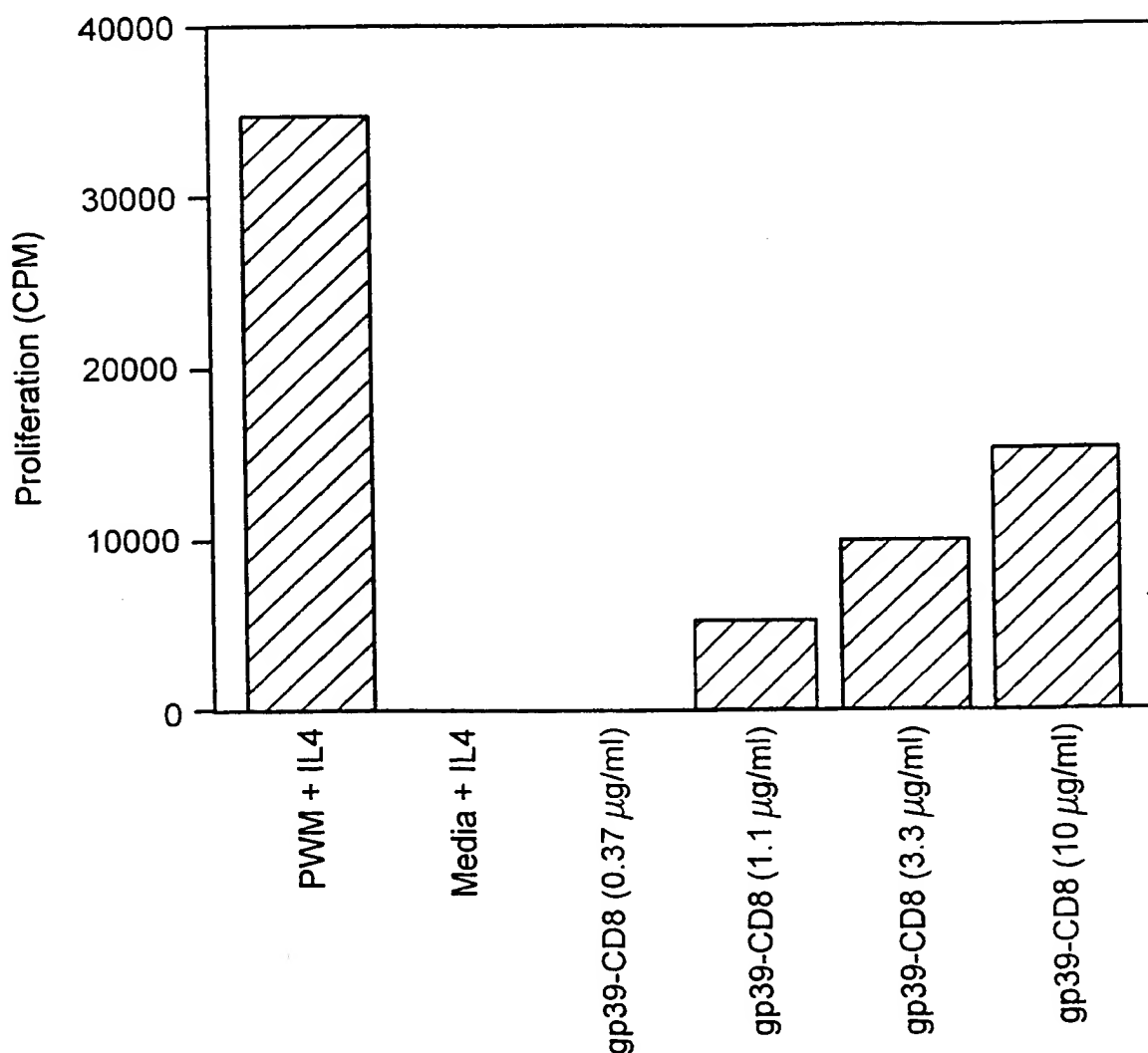
Effect of H24-31.1 on generation of antigen specific B cells responses to a T cell dependent recall antigen.

Human spleen cells primed with tetanus toxoid for 3 days in vitro, were transferred to SCID mice at a concentration of approximately  $1 \times 10^7$  cells/SCID. After 6 six days the resulting hu-SPL-SCID mice were injected with PBS (group 1) or with 300  $\mu$ g H24-31.1 (groups 1 and 2). The following day the Hu-SPL-SCIDs were all boosted with tetanus toxoid. The mice in group 3 received 2 further injections of 300  $\mu$ g H24-31.1 each with 3 days interval. The mice were bled at various timepoints and the levels of human IgG anti-tetanus toxoid titers determined by ELISA.

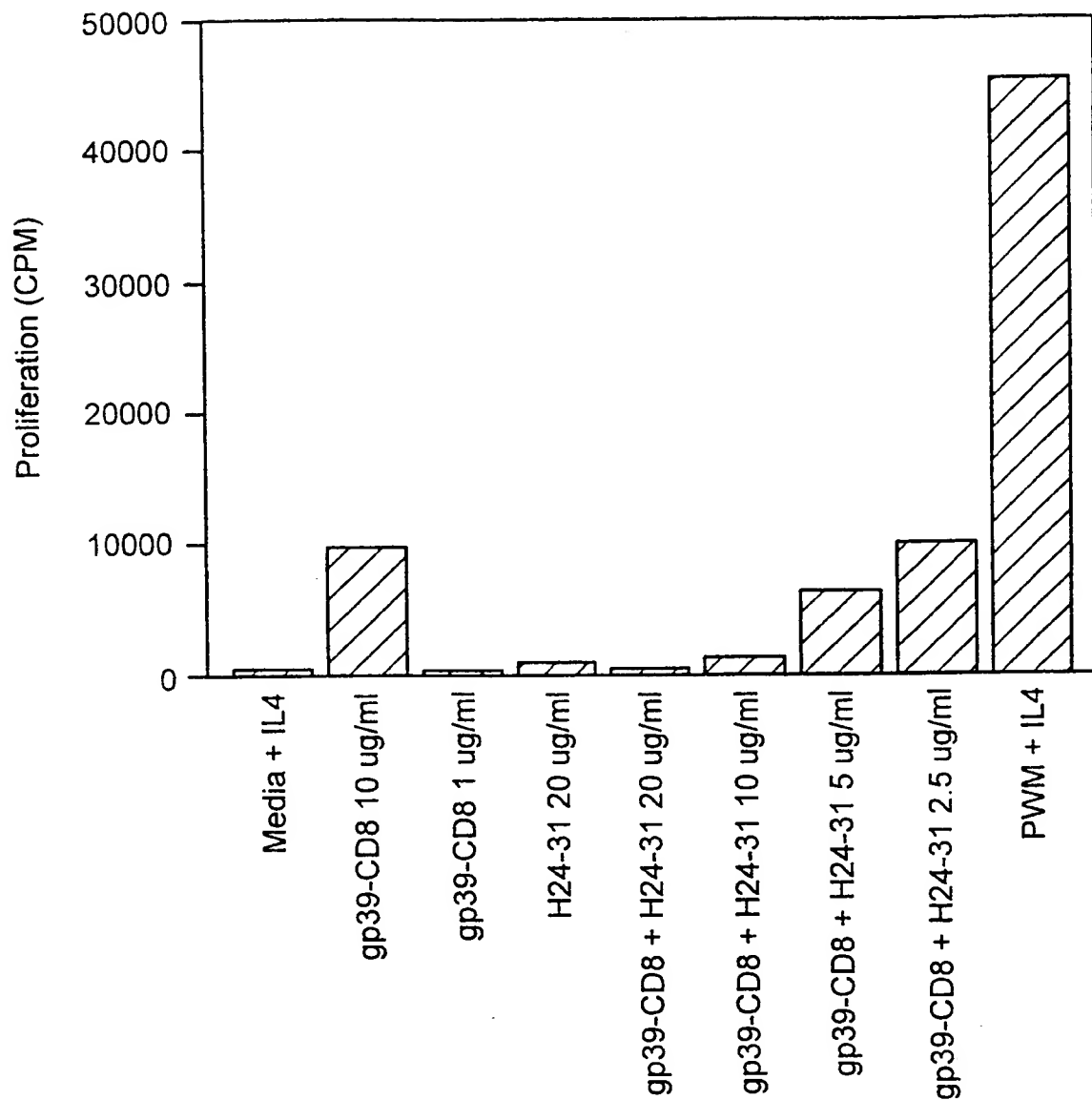
Anti-TT titer in 24-31-Hu-SPL-SCID



The figure shows that injection of H24-31.1 inhibited generation of tetanus toxoid specific responses by approximately 90% (group 3). Levels of total human IgG was comparable between the three groups.

**FIG. 24****Proliferation of Human B Cells by Soluble gp39-CD8**

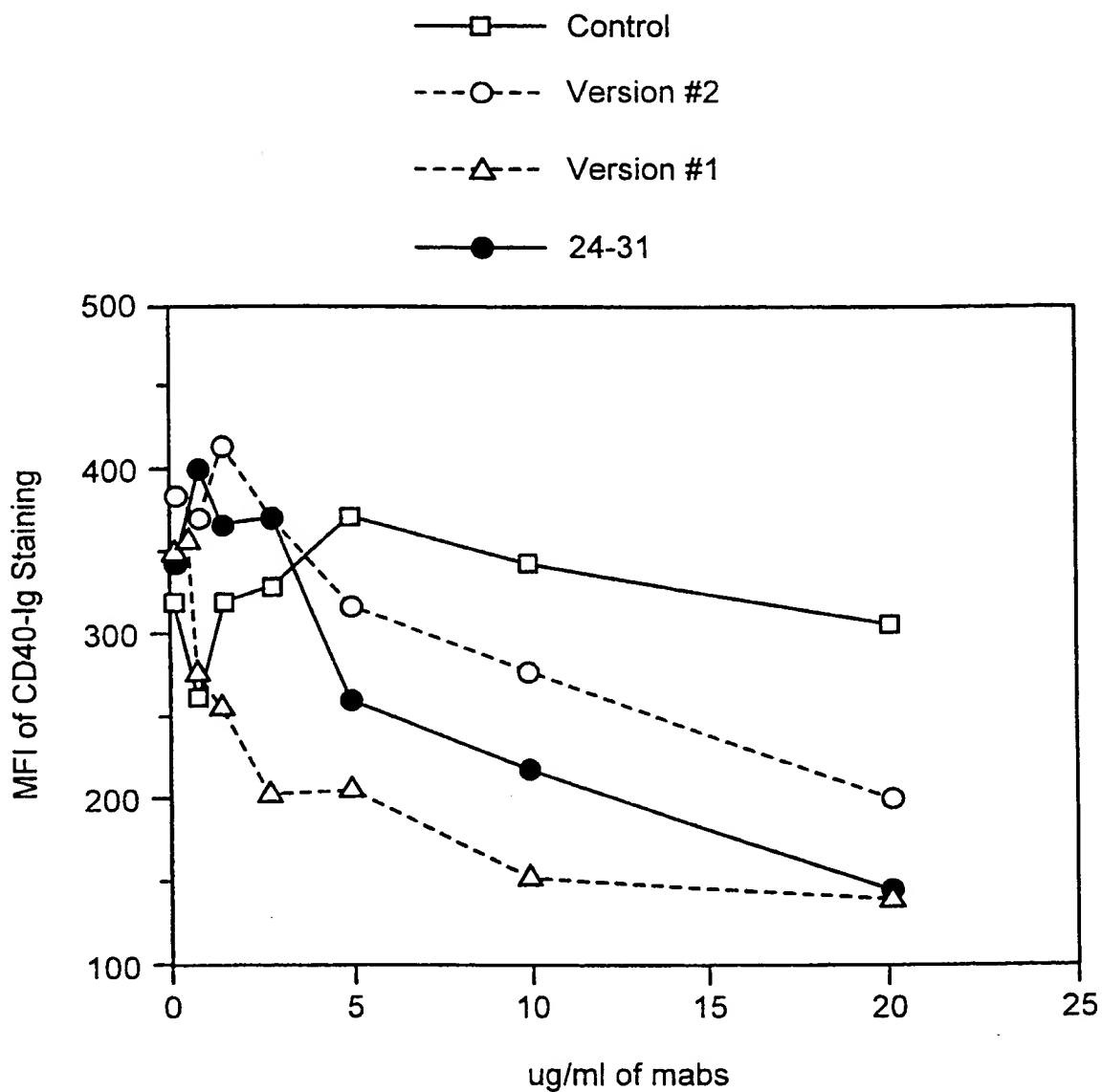
Different concentrations of CD8-gp39 were incubated with enriched human B cell plus IL-4, in a 4 day proliferation assay. The CPM obtained in B cells plus IL-4 cultures without gp39-CD8 was used as the background and subtracted from the total CPM of test culture stimulated with gp39-CD8. Cells cultured with PWM plus IL-4 served as positive control for B cell proliferation. CPM represents the mean CPM of samples tested in triplicates.

**FIG. 25****Inhibition of B-Cell Proliferation by H24-31**

Different concentrations of H24-31.1 antibody were incubated with B cells ( $1 \times 10^5$ ) cultured with IL-4 (1000 U/ml) and 10  $\mu$ g/ml of gp39-CD8 in a 4 day proliferation assay. Cells cultured with PWM plus IL-4 served as positive control for B cell proliferation. CPM represents the mean CPM of samples tested in triplicates.

**FIG. 26**

Blocking of CD40-Ig binding to gp39 by humanized versions of 24-31



This figure illustrates that the murine and humanized versions of 24-31 block binding of CD40-Ig.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US98/18163

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) : Please See Extra Sheet.

US CL : Please See Extra Sheet.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : Please See Extra Sheet.

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched  
NONE

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS, DIALOG, BIOSIS, CA, EMBASE, MEDLINE, WPI

search terms: gp39, CD40L, cd40 ligand, 24(w)31, autoimmun?, transplant?, graft?

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	US 5,474,771 A (LEDERMAN ET AL.) 12 December 1995, see entire document.	1-6, 10-16, 25-29
X	WO 94/04570 A1 (SCHERING CORPORATION) 03 March 1994, see entire document.	1-6, 10-16, 25-29
X	WO 95/06666 A1 (TRUSTEES OF DARMOUTH COLLEGE) 09 March 1995, see entire document.	1-34

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	*T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
*A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	*X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
*B* earlier document published on or after the international filing date	*Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
*L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	*Z* document member of the same patent family
*O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	
*P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	

Date of the actual completion of the international search

18 NOVEMBER 1998

Date of mailing of the international search report

22 DEC 1998

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US  
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks  
Box PCT  
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized Officer

PHILLIP GAMBEL

Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/18163

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

IPC (6):

A61K 39.395; CO7H 21/04; CO7K 16/00, 16/18, 16/28; C12N 5/10, 15/13; C12P 21/08

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

US CL :

424/1301., 133.1, 141.1, 143.1, 144.1, 152.1, 154.1, 173.,1; 435/451. 452, 326, 328, 332, 334, 343, 343 .1, 343.2;  
530/387.1, 387.3, 388.1, 388.2, 388.33, 388.7, 388.75; 536/23.1, 23.4, 23.5, 23.53

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched

Classification System: U.S.

424/1301., 133.1, 141.1, 143.1, 144.1, 152.1, 154.1, 173.,1; 435/451. 452, 326, 328, 332, 334, 343, 343 .1, 343.2;  
530/387.1, 387.3, 388.1, 388.2, 388.33, 388.7, 388.75; 536/23.1, 23.4, 23.5, 23.53



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b> <b>A61K 39/395, C07H 21/04, C07K 16/00, 16/18, 16/28, C12N 5/10, 15/13, C12P 21/08</b>	<b>A1</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 99/12566</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 18 March 1999 (18.03.99)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US98/18163 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 8 September 1998 (08.09.98) <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> 08/925,339      8 September 1997 (08.09.97)      US <b>(71) Applicant:</b> IDEC PHARMACEUTICALS CORPORATION [US/US]; 11011 Torreyana Road, San Diego, CA 92121 (US). <b>(72) Inventors:</b> BLACK, Amelia; 2251 1/2 Oxford Avenue, Cardiff, CA 92007 (US). HANNA, Nabil; 3255 Fortuna Ranch Road, Olivenhian, CA 92024 (US). PADLAN, Eduardo, A.; 4006 Simms Drive, Kinsington, MD 20895 (US). NEWMAN, Roland, A.; 4311 Robbins Street, San Diego, CA 92122 (US). <b>(74) Agents:</b> GESS, E., Joseph et al.; Burns, Doane, Swecker & Mathis L.L.P., P.O. Box 1404, Alexandria, VA 22313-1404 (US).		<b>(81) Designated States:</b> AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i>
<b>(54) Title:</b> HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES TO HUMAN gp39, COMPOSITIONS CONTAINING AND THERAPEUTIC USE THEREOF <b>(57) Abstract</b> <p>The present invention is directed to humanized antibodies which bind human gp39 and their use as therapeutic agents. These humanized antibodies are especially useful for treatment of autoimmune diseases; and an immunosuppressant during transplantation of heterologous cells, tissues or organs, cell therapy, and gene therapy.</p>		

\*(Referred to in PCT Gazette No. 22/1999, Section II)

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon			PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		



- 1 -

HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES TO HUMAN GP39, COMPOSITIONS CONTAINING  
AND THERAPEUTIC USE THEREOF

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to humanized anti-  
5 bodies specific for human gp39, DNA encoding such antibod-  
ies, methods for their production, pharmaceutical composi-  
tions containing, and the use of such humanized antibodies  
as therapeutic agents. These antibodies have particular  
application in the treatment of autoimmune diseases includ-  
10 ing, e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis,  
diabetes, and systemic lupus erythematosus as well as non-  
autoimmune diseases including, e.g., graft-versus-host  
disease and for preventing graft rejection.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

15 The immune system is capable of producing two types of  
antigen-specific responses to foreign antigens. Cell-  
mediated immunity is the term used to refer to effector  
functions of the immune system mediated by T lymphocytes.  
Humoral immunity is the term used to refer to production of  
20 antigen-specific antibodies by B lymphocytes. It has long  
been appreciated that the development of humoral immunity  
against most antigens requires not only antibody-producing  
B lymphocytes but also the involvement of helper T (herein-  
after Th) lymphocytes. (Mitchison, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 1:18-  
25 25 (1971); Claman and Chaperon, *Transplant Rev.*, 1:92-119  
(1969); Katz et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 70:2624-  
2629 (1973); Reff et al, *Nature*, 226:1257-1260 (1970)).  
Certain signals, or "help", are provided by Th cells in

- 2 -

response to stimulation by Thymus-dependent (hereinafter TD) antigens. While some B lymphocyte help is mediated by soluble molecules released by Th cells (for instance lymphokines such as IL-4 and IL-5), activation of B cells  
5 also requires a contact-dependent interaction between B cells and Th cells. (Hirohata et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:3736-3744 (1988); Bartlett et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1745-1765 (1989)). This indicates that B cell activation involves an obligatory interaction between cell surface molecules on B cells and Th cells. Such an interaction is further supported by the observation that isolated  
10 plasma membranes of activated T cells can provide helper functions necessary for B cell activation. (Brian, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 85:564-568 (1988); Hodgkin et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145:2025-2034 (1990); Noelle et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:1118-1124 (1991)).

It is further known that in a contact-dependent process termed "T cell helper function", CD4<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes direct the activation and differentiation of B lymphocytes and thereby regulate the humoral immune response by modulating the specificity, secretion and isotype-encoded functions of antibody molecules (Mitchell et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 128:821 (1968); Mitchison, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 1:68 (1971); White et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 14:664 (1978); Reinherz  
20 et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 74:4061 (1979); Janeway et al, *Immunol. Rev.*, 101:39 (1988); O'Brien et al, *J. Immunol.*, 141:3335 (1988); Rahemtulla et al, *Nature*, 353:180 (1991); and Grusby et al, *Science*, 253:1417 (1991)).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

- 3 -

The process by which T cells help B cells to differentiate has been divided into two distinct phases; the inductive and effector phases (Vitetta et al, *Adv. Immunol.*, 45:1 (1989); Noelle et al, *Immunol. Today*, 11:361 (1990)).

5 In the inductive phase, resting T cells contact antigen-primed B cells and this association allows clonotypic T cell receptor (TCR)-CD4 complexes to interact with Ia/Ag complexes on B cells (Janeway et al, *Immunol. Rev.*, 101:39 (1988); Katz et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*, 70:2624 (1973);

10 Zinkernagel, *Adv. Exp. Med.*, 66:527 (1976); Sprent, *J. Exp. Med.*, 147:1159 (1978); Sprent, *Immunol. Rev.*, 42:158 (1978); Jones et al, *Nature*, 292:547 (1981); Julius et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 18:375 (1982); Chestnut et al, *J. Immunol.*, 126:1575 (1981); and Rogozinski et al, *J.*

15 *Immunol.*, 126:735 (1984)). TCR/CD4 recognition of Ia/Ag results in the formation of stable T-B cognate pairs and bi-directional T and B cell activation (Sanders et al, *J. Immunol.*, 137:2395 (1986); Snow et al, *J. Immunol.*, 130:614 (1983); Krusemeier et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:367 (1988);

20 Noelle et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1807 (1989); Bartlett et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1745 (1989); and Kupfer et al, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.*, 7:309 (1987)). In the effector phase, activated T cells drive B cell differentiation by secreting lymphokines (Thompson et al, *J. Immunol.*, 134:369 (1985)) and by

25 contact-dependent stimuli (Noelle et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1807 (1989); Clement et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:3736 (1984); Crow et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 164:1760 (1986); Brian, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 85:564 (1988); Hirohata et al, *J. Immunol.* 140:3736 (1988); Jover et al, *Clin. Immunol.*

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

- 4 -

*Immun.*, 53:90 (1989); Whalen et al, *J. Immunol.*, 141:2230 (1988); Pollok et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:1633 (1991); and Bartlett et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1745 (1990)), both of which are required for T cells to drive small resting B  
5 cells to terminally differentiate into Ig secreting cells (Clement et al, *J. Immunol.*, 132:740 (1984); Martinez et al, *Nature*, 290:60 (1981); and Andersson et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 77:1612 (1980)).

Although the inductive phase of T cell help is Ag-  
10 dependent and MHC-restricted (Janeway et al, *Immun. Rev.*, 101:34 (1988); Katz et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 10:2624 (1973); Zinkernagle, *Adv. Exp. Med. Biol.*, 66:527 (1976)); the effector phase of T cell helper function can be Ag-independent and MHC-nonrestricted (Clement et al, *J.*  
15 *Immunol.*, 132:740 (1984); Hirohata et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:3736 (1988); Whalen et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1715 (1988)). An additional contrasting feature is that the inductive phase of T cell help often requires CD4 molecules and is inhibited by anti-CD4 mAb (Rogozinski et al, *J.*  
20 *Immunol.*, 126:735 (1984)), whereas helper effector function does not require CD4 molecules (Friedman et al, *Cell Immunol.*, 103:105 (1986)) and is not inhibited by anti-CD4 mAbs (Brian, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 85:564 (1988); Hirohata et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:3736 (1988); Whalen et al,  
25 *J. Immunol.*, 143:1745 (1988); and Tohma et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:2547 (1991)). The non-specific helper effector function is believed to be focused on specific B cell targets by the localized nature of the T-B cell interactions with antigen specific, cognate pairs (Bartlett et al, *J.*

- 5 -

*Immunol.*, 143:1745 (1989); Kupfer et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 165:1565 (1987) and Poo et al, *Nature*, 332:378 (1988)).

Although terminal B cell differentiation requires both contact- and lymphokine-mediated stimuli from T cells, intermediate stages of B cell differentiation can be induced by activated T cell surfaces in the absence of secreted factors (Crow et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 164:1760 (1986); Brian, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 85:564 (1988); Sekita et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 18:1405 (1988); Hodgkin et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145:2025 (1990); Noelle et al, *FASEB J*, 5:2770 (1991)). These intermediate effects on B cells include induction of surface CD23 expression (Crow et al, *Cell Immunol.*, 121:94 (1989)), enzymes associated with cell cycle progression (Pollok et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:1633 (1991)) and responsiveness to lymphokines (Noelle et al, *FASEB J*, 5:2770 (1989); Pollok et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:1633 (1991)). Recently some of the activation-induced T cell surface molecules that direct B cell activation have been identified. Additionally, functional studies have characterized some features of activation-induced T cell surface molecules that direct B cell activation. First, T cells acquire the ability to stimulate B cells 4-8 h following activation (Bartlett et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145:3956 (1990) and Tohma et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:2544 (1991)). Second, the B cell stimulatory activity associated with the surfaces of activated T cells is preserved on paraformaldehyde fixed cells (Noelle et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1807 (1989); Cros et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 164:1760 (1986); Pollok et al, *J. Immunol.*, 146:1633 (1991); Tohma et al, *J. Immunol.*,

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

- 6 -

146:2544 (1991); and Kubota et al, *Immunol.*, 72:40 (1991)) and on purified membrane fragments (Hodgkin et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145:2025 (1990) and Martinez et al, *Nature*, 290:60 (1981)). Third, the B cell stimulatory activity is sensitive to protease treatment (Noelle et al, *J. Immunol.*, 143:1807 (1989); Sekita et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 18:1405 (1988); and Hodgkin et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145:2025 (1990)). Fourth, the process of acquiring these surface active structures following T cell activation is inhibited by cycloheximide (Tohma et al, *J. Immunol.*, 196:2349 (1991) and Hodgkin et al, *J. Immunol.*, 195:2025 (1990)).

A cell surface molecule, CD40, has been identified on immature and mature B lymphocytes which, when crosslinked by antibodies, induces B cell proliferation. Valle et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 19:1463-1467 (1989); Gordon et al, *J. Immunol.*, 140:1425-1430 (1988); Gruder et al, *J. Immunol.*, 142:4144-4152 (1989).

CD40 has been molecularly cloned and characterized (Stamenkovic et al, *EMBO J.*, 8:1403-1410 (1989)).

CD40 is expressed on B cells, interdigitating dendritic cells, macrophages, follicular dendritic cells, and thymic epithelium (Clark, *Tissue Antigens* 36:33 (1990); Alderson et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 178:669 (1993); Galy et al, *J. Immunol.* 142:772 (1992)). Human CD40 is a type I membrane protein of 50 kDa and belongs to the nerve growth factor receptor family (Hollenbaugh et al, *Immunol. Rev.*, 138:23 (1994)). Signaling through CD40 in the presence of IL-10 induces IgA, IgM and IgG production, indicating that isotype switching is regulated through these interactions.

- 7 -

The interaction between CD40 and its ligand results in a primed state of the B cell, rendering it receptive to subsequent signals.

Also, a ligand for CD40, gp39 (also called CD40 ligand or CD40L) has recently been molecularly cloned and characterized (Armitage et al, *Nature*, 357:80-82 (1992); Lederman et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 175:1091-1101 (1992); Hollenbaugh et al, *EMBO J.*, 11:4313-4319 (1992)). The gp39 protein is expressed on activated, but not resting, CD4<sup>+</sup> Th cells.

10 Spriggs et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 176:1543-1550 (1992); Lane et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 22:2573-2578 (1992); and Roy et al, *J. Immunol.*, 151:1-14 (1993). Cells transfected with gp39 gene and expressing the gp39 protein on their surface can trigger B cell proliferation and, together with

15 other stimulatory signals, can induce antibody production. Armitage et al, *Nature*, 357:80-82 (1992); and Hollenbaugh et al, *EMBO J.*, 11:4313-4319 (1992). In particular, the ligand for CD40, gp39, has been identified for the mouse (Noelle et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89:6550 (1992);

20 Armitage et al, *Nature*, 357:80 (1992)) and for humans (Hollenbaugh et al, *Embo. J.* 11:4313 (1992); Spriggs et al, *J. Exp. Met.*, 176:1543 (1992)). gp39 is a type II membrane protein and is part of a new gene super family which includes TNF- $\alpha$ , TNF- $\beta$  and the ligands for FAS, CD27, CD30 and

25 4-1BB.

Expression of gp39 can be readily induced *in vitro* on CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells using either anti-CD3 antibody or phorbol myristate acetate (PMA) plus ionomycin. Expression is rapid and transient, peaking at 6-8 hours and returning to

- 8 -

near resting levels between 24 and 48 hours (Roy et al, *J. Immunol.*, 151:2497 (1993)). In vivo, gp39 has been reported in humans to be present on CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells in the mantle and centrocytic zones of lymphoid follicles and the periarteriolar lymphocyte sheath of the spleen, in association with CD40<sup>+</sup> B cells (Lederman et al, *J. Immunol.*, 149:3807 (1992)). gp39<sup>+</sup> T cells produce IL-2, IL-4 and IFN- $\gamma$  (Van der Eetwegh et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 178:1555 (1993)).

Unique insights into the novel role of gp39 in the regulation of humoral immunity have been provided by studies of a human disease, X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome (HIM). HIM is a profound, X-linked immunodeficiency typified by a loss in thymus dependent humoral immunity, the inability to produce IgG, IgA and IgE. Mutations in the gp39 gene were responsible for the expression of a non-functional gp39 protein and the inability of the helper T cells from HIM patients to activate B cells (Allen et al, *Science*, 259:990 (1993); Aruffo et al, *Cell*, 72:291 (1993); DiSanto et al, *Nature*, 361:541 (1993); Korthauer et al, *Nature*, 361:539 (1993)). These studies support the conclusion that early after T cell receptor engagement of the peptide/MHC class II complex, gp39 is induced on the cognate helper T cell, and the binding of gp39 to CD40 on the B cell induces the B cell to move into the cell cycle and differentiate to immunoglobulin (Ig) secretion and isotype switching.

Functional studies have shown that treatment of mice with anti-gp39 completely abolished the antibody response against thymus dependent antigens (SRBC and TNP-KLH), but not thymus independent antigens (TNP-Ficoll) (Foy et al, *J.*



- 9 -

Exp. Med., 178:1567 (1993)). In addition, treatment with anti-gp39 prevented the development of collagen-induced arthritis (CIA) in mice injected with collagen (Durie et al, Science, 261:1328 (1993)). Finally, anti-gp39 prevented formation of memory B cells and germinal centers in mouse spleen (Foy et al, J. Exp. Med., 180:157 (1994)). Collectively, these data provide extensive evidence that the interaction between gp39 on T cells and CD40 on B cells is essential for antibody responses against thymus dependent antigens.

Recently, a number of murine models of autoimmune disease have been exploited to evaluate the potential therapeutic value of anti-gp39 administration on the development of disease. A brief discussion of the results of studies in these models are provided below:

*Collagen-Induced Arthritis:*

CIA is an animal model for the human autoimmune disease rheumatoid arthritis (RA) (Trenthorn et al, J. Exp. Med., 146:857 (1977)). This disease can be induced in many species by the administration of heterologous type II collagen (Courtenay et al, Nature, 283:665 (1980); Cathcart et al, Lab. Invest., 54:26 (1986)).

To study the effect anti-gp39 on the induction of CIA (Durie et al, Science, 261:1328 (1993)) male DBA1/J mice were injected intradermally with chick type II collagen emulsified in complete Freund's adjuvant at the base of the tail. A subsequent challenge was carried out 21 days later. Mice were then treated with the relevant control antibody or anti-gp39. Groups of mice treated with anti-

- 10 -

gp39 showed no titers of anti-collagen antibodies compared to immunized, untreated control mice. Histological analysis indicated that mice treated with anti-gp39 antibody showed no signs of inflammation or any of the typical pathohistological manifestations of the disease observed in immunized animals. These results indicated that gp39-CD40 interactions are absolutely essential in the induction of CIA. If the initial cognate interaction between the T cell and B cell is not obtained, then the downstream processes, such as autoantibody formation and the resulting inflammatory responses, do not occur.

Recently it has been shown that gp39 is important in activating monocytes to produce TNF- $\alpha$  and IL-6 in the absence of GM-CSF, IL-3 and IFN- $\gamma$  (Alderson et al, *J. Exp. Med.*, 178:669 (1993)). TNF- $\alpha$  has been implicated in the CIA disease process (Thorbecke et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 89:7375 (1992) and in RA (DiGiovane et al, *Ann. Rheum. Dis.*, 47:68 (1988); Chu et al, *Arthrit. Rheum.*, 39:1125 (1991); Brennan et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.*, 22:1907 (1992).

Thus, inhibition of TNF- $\alpha$  by anti-gp39 may have profound anti-inflammatory effects in the joints of arthritic mice. Both inhibition of TNF- $\alpha$  and of T cell-B cell interactions by anti-gp39 may be contributory to manifestations of CIA. *Experimental Allergic Encephalomyelitis (EAE):*

EAE is an experimental autoimmune disease of the central nervous system (CNS) (Zamvil et al, *Ann. Rev. Immunol.*, 8:579 (1990) and is a disease model for the human autoimmune condition, multiple sclerosis (MS) (Alvord et al, "Experimental Allergic Model for Multiple Sclerosis,"

- 11 -

NY 511 (1984)). It is readily induced in mammalian species by immunizations of myelin basic protein purified from the CNS or an encephalitogenic proteolipid (PLP). SJL/J mice are a susceptible strain of mice (H-2<sup>s</sup>) and, upon induction  
5 of EAE, these mice develop an acute paralytic disease and an acute cellular infiltrate is identifiable within the CNS.

Classen and co-workers (unpublished data) have studied the effects of anti-gp39 on the induction of EAE in SJL/J  
10 mice. They found that EAE development was completely suppressed in the anti-gp39 treated animals. In addition, anti-PLP antibody responses were delayed and reduced compared to those obtained for control animals.

EAE is an example of a cell-mediated autoimmune disease mediated via T cells, with no direct evidence for the requirement for autoantibodies in disease progression. Interference with the interaction between gp39 and CD40 prevents disease induction and the adoptive transfer of disease.

20 *Chronic (c) and acute (a) graft-versus-host-disease (GVHD):*

Chronic and acute GVHD result from donor cells responding to host disparate MHC alleles. In cGVHD (H-2<sup>d</sup>-->H-2<sup>bd</sup>), heightened polyclonal immunoglobulin production is due to the interaction of allospecific helper T cells and the  
25 host B cells. *In vivo* administration of anti-gp39 antibody blocked cGVHD-induced serum anti-DNA autoantibodies, IgE production, spontaneous immunoglobulin production *in vitro*, associated splenomegaly and the ability to transfer disease. Durie F.H. et al, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 94:133 (1994).

- 12 -

Antibody production remained inhibited for extended periods of time after termination of anti-gp39 administration. Anti-allogeneic cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) responses induced in GVHD were also prevented by the *in vivo* administration of anti-gp39. These data suggest that CD40-gp39 interactions are critical in the generation of both forms of GVHD. The fact that CTL responses were inhibited and a brief treatment with anti-gp39 resulted in long-term prevention of disease suggest permanent alterations in the T cell compartment by the co-administration of allogeneic cells and anti-gp39 antibody.

Various research groups have reported the production of murine antibodies specific to gp39, which are disclosed to possess therapeutic utility as immunosuppressants. For example, WO 93/09812, published May 27, 1993, and assigned to Columbia University; EP 0,555,880, published August 18, 1993, and PCT US/94/09872, filed September 2, 1994 by Noelle et al and assigned to Dartmouth College, describe murine antibodies specific to gp39 and their use as therapeutics and immunosuppressants.

Also, Scaria et al, *Gene Therapy*, 4:611-617 (1997) report the use of an antibody to gp39 to inhibit humoral and cellular immune responses to a DNA (adenoviral/vector).

However, while murine antibodies have applicability as therapeutic agents in humans, they are disadvantageous in some respects. Specifically, murine antibodies, because of the fact that they are of foreign species origin, may be immunogenic in humans. This often results in a neutralizing antibody response, which is particularly problematic if

- 13 -

the antibodies are desired to be administered repeatedly, e.g., in treatment of a chronic or recurrent disease condition. Also, because they contain murine constant domains they may not exhibit human effector functions.

5           In an effort to eliminate or reduce such problems, chimeric antibodies have been disclosed. Chimeric antibodies contain portions of two different antibodies, typically of two different species. Generally, such antibodies contain human constant and another species, typically  
10   murine variable regions. For example, some mouse/human chimeric antibodies have been reported which exhibit binding characteristics of the parental mouse antibody, and effector functions associated with the human constant region. See, e.g., Cabilly et al, U.S. Patent 4,816,567;  
15   Shoemaker et al., U.S. Patent 4,978,745; Beavers et al., U.S. Patent 4,975,369; and Boss et al., U.S. Patent 4,816,397, all of which are incorporated by reference herein. Generally, these chimeric antibodies are  
20   constructed by preparing a genomic gene library from DNA extracted from pre-existing murine hybridomas (Nishimura et al, *Cancer Research*, 47:999 (1987)). The library is then screened for variable region genes from both heavy and light chains exhibiting the correct antibody fragment rearrangement patterns. Alternatively, cDNA libraries are  
25   prepared from RNA extracted from the hybridomas and screened, or the variable regions are obtained by polymerase chain reaction. The cloned variable region genes are then ligated into an expression vector containing cloned cassettes of the appropriate heavy or light chain human

- 14 -

constant region gene. The chimeric genes are then expressed in a cell line of choice, usually a murine myeloma line. Such chimeric antibodies have been used in human therapy.

5 In a commonly assigned application, Serial No. 07/912,292, "Primatized"<sup>TM</sup> antibodies are disclosed which contain human constant and Old World monkey variable regions. These Primatized<sup>TM</sup> antibodies are well tolerated in humans given their low or weak immunogenicity.

10 Also, humanized antibodies are known in the art. Ideally, "humanization" results in an antibody that is less immunogenic, with complete retention of the antigen-binding properties of the original molecule. In order to retain all the antigen-binding properties of the original anti-  
15 body, the structure of its combining-site has to be faithfully reproduced in the "humanized" version. This can potentially be achieved by transplanting the combining site of the nonhuman antibody onto a human framework, either (a) by grafting the entire nonhuman variable domains onto  
20 human constant regions to generate a chimeric antibody (Morrison et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, 81:6801 (1984); Morrison and Oi, *Adv. Immunol.*, 44:65 (1988) (which preserves the ligand-binding properties, but which also retains the immunogenicity of the nonhuman variable do-  
25 mains); (b) by grafting only the nonhuman CDRs onto human framework and constant regions with or without retention of critical framework residues (Jones et al, *Nature*, 321:522 (1986); Verhoeyen et al, *Science*, 239:1539 (1988)); or (c) by transplanting the entire nonhuman variable domains (to

- 15 -

preserve ligand-binding properties) but also "cloaking" them with a human-like surface through judicious replacement of exposed residues (to reduce antigenicity) (Padlan, *Molec. Immunol.*, 28:489 (1991)).

5           Essentially, humanization by CDR grafting involves transplanting only the CDRs onto human fragment onto human framework and constant regions. Theoretically, this should substantially eliminate immunogenicity (except if allotypic or idiotypic differences exist). However, it has been  
10       reported that some framework residues of the original antibody also need to be preserved (Riechmann et al, *Nature*, 332:323 (1988); Queen et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 86:10,029 (1989)).

          The framework residues which need to be preserved can  
15       be identified by computer modeling. Alternatively, critical framework residues may potentially be identified by comparing known antibody combining site structures (Padlan, *Molec. Immun.*, 31(3):169-217 (1994)).

          The residues which potentially affect antigen binding  
20       fall into several groups. The first group comprises residues that are contiguous with the combining site surface which could therefore make direct contact with antigens. They include the amino-terminal residues and those adjacent to the CDRs. The second group includes residues that could  
25       alter the structure or relative alignment of the CDRs either by contacting the CDRs or the opposite chains. The third group comprises amino acids with buried side chains that could influence the structural integrity of the variable domains. The residues in these groups are usually

- 16 -

found in the same positions (Padlan, 1994 (*Id.*) according to the adopted numbering system (see Kabat et al, "Sequences of proteins of immunological interest, 5th ed., Pub. No. 91-3242, U.S. Dept. Health & Human Services, NIH, Bethesda, MD, 1991)).

However, while humanized antibodies are desirable because of their potential low immunogenicity in humans, their production is unpredictable. For example, sequence modification of antibodies may result in substantial or even total loss of antigen binding function, or loss of binding specificity. Alternatively, "humanized antibodies" may still exhibit immunogenicity in humans, irrespective of sequence modification.

Thus, there still exists a significant need in the art for novel humanized antibodies to desired antigens. More specifically, there exists a need in the art for humanized antibodies specific to gp39, because of their potential as immunotherapeutic agents.

#### OBJECTS OF THE INVENTION

Toward this end, it is an object of the invention to provide humanized antibodies which are specific to human gp39.

More specifically, it is an object of the invention to provide humanized antibodies derived from murine antibodies to gp39 and in particular 24-31, a specific murine antibody which binds to human gp39.

It is also an object of the invention to provide pharmaceutical compositions containing humanized antibodies which are specific to human gp39.



- 17 -

It is a more specific object of the invention to provide pharmaceutical compositions containing humanized antibodies derived from 24-31, a murine antibody which specifically binds to human gp39.

5 It is another specific object of the invention to provide methods of using humanized antibodies to human gp39 for treatment of human disease conditions, which are treat-  
able by modulation of gp39 expression and/or inhibition of  
the gp39/CD40 binding interaction including, e.g., autoim-  
10 mune diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus, rheuma-  
toid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, idiopathic thrombocyto-  
penic purpura (ITP), diabetes and non-autoimmune conditions  
such as graft-versus-host disease and transplantation.

It is still another object of the invention to provide  
15 nucleic acid sequences which encode for humanized antibod-  
ies to human gp39.

It is a more specific object of the invention to  
provide nucleic acid sequences which encode humanized  
antibodies derived from 24-31, a murine antibody which  
20 specifically binds to human gp39 antigen.

It is another object of the invention to provide  
vectors which provide for the expression of humanized  
antibodies to human gp39, in particular humanized antibod-  
ies derived from 24-31, a murine antibody which specifical-  
25 ly binds to human gp39 antigen.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

In its broadest embodiment, the present invention is directed to humanized antibodies which retain not less than about one-tenth and more preferably not lower than

- 18 -

one-third the gp39 antigen binding affinity of the murine 24-31 antibody and/or which retain not less than about one-tenth and more preferably not less than about one-third the *in vitro* functional activity of the murine antibody 24-31, e.g., in B-cell assays which measure T-cell dependent antibody production. More particularly, the present humanized antibodies retain at least one-tenth and more preferably at least about one-third the half-maximal potency in *in vitro* functional activity in a B cell assay at a concentration of not more than three times the concentration of the 24-31 antibody.

The present invention is further directed to humanized antibodies which bind to the same epitope as the murine 24-31 antibody and/or which are capable of competing with the murine 24-31 antibody for inhibiting the binding of CD40 to gp39 and/or which contain the CDR's of the 24-31 antibody.

The present invention is more preferably directed to humanized antibodies derived from murine 24-31 which possess the humanized variable light sequences and/or humanized variable heavy sequences set forth below:

- (1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITTC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- 25 (3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVITTC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK

- 19 -

and a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the following group:

- (1) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- 5 (2) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- (3) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNNQFSLNLSVTRADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- 10 (4) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCAVYSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS

as well as variants and equivalents thereof. Variants and equivalents thereof in the present invention are intended to embrace humanized immunoglobulin sequences wherein one or several of the amino acid residues in the above identified humanized variable heavy and/or variable light sequences are modified by substitution, addition and/or deletion in such manner that does not substantially effect gp39 antigen binding affinity. In particular, the present invention embraces variants and equivalents which contain conservative substitution mutations, i.e., the substitution of one or more amino acids by similar amino acids. For example, conservative substitution refers to the substitution of an amino acid within the same general class, e.g., an acidic amino acid, or a basic amino acid, a neutral amino acid by another amino acid within the same class.

- 20 -

What is intended by a conservative amino acid substitution is well known in the art. Preferably, such variants and equivalents will retain not less than about one-tenth and more preferably not less than about one-third the gp39 antigen binding affinity as the parent murine 24-31 antibody and more preferably not less than about one-third the gp39 antigen binding affinity as the murine 24-31 antibody. Additionally, such variants and equivalents will preferably retain not lower than one-tenth and more preferably retain at least about one-third the *in vitro* functional activity of murine antibody 24-31, e.g., in B-cell assays which measure T-cell dependent antibody production. More preferably, these variants and equivalents will retain at least about one-third the *in vitro* functional activity of murine antibody 24-31, for example, in B-cell assays which measure T-cell dependent antibody production. More specifically, these antibodies will retain the half-maximal potency in *in vitro* functional activity in a B cell assay at a concentration of not more than about three times the concentration of the parent 24-31 antibody.

The present invention is further directed to nucleic acid sequences which encode for the expression of such humanized antibodies, as well as expression vectors which provide for the production of humanized antibodies in recombinant host cells. In the most preferred embodiments these DNA sequences will encode for the humanized variable heavy and/or humanized variable light sequences set forth below:

- 21 -

- (1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITIC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- 5 (3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVITIC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK

and a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the  
10 following group:

- (1) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- (2) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHGPNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- 15 (3) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHGPNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNNQFSLNLNSVTRADTGVIYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- (4) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSSETLSLTCAVYSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYKLSSVTAADTGVIYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS.

20 Moreover, the present invention also embraces equivalent and variants thereof as defined *supra*.

The present invention is further directed to the use of the above-identified humanized antibodies specific to

- 22 -

gp39 as pharmaceuticals. The present invention is also directed to the use of the subject humanized anti-gp39 antibodies for treating diseases treatable by modulation of gp39 expression or by inhibition of the gp39/CD40 interaction. The present invention is more particularly directed to the use of humanized antibodies of the above-identified humanized antibodies specific to gp39 for the treatment of autoimmune disorders, for example, rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, diabetes, systemic lupus erythematosus and ITP. The present invention is further directed to the use of the subject humanized antibodies to gp39 for the treatment of non-autoimmune disorders including graft-versus-host disease and for inhibiting graft rejection.

Also, the subject invention is further directed to usage of the subject humanized antibodies as immunosuppressants, in particular during gene or cellular therapy. The subject humanized antibodies should enhance the efficacy of gene therapy or cellular therapy by inhibiting adverse immunogenic reaction to vectors and cells used therein. For example, they may be used to inhibit humoral and cellular immune responses against viral vectors, e.g., retroviral vectors, adenoviral vectors. Also, the use of such antibodies should enable such cells or vectors to be administered repeatedly, which will facilitate treatment of chronic diseases such as cancers and autoimmune diseases.

#### **BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES**

**Figure 1** depicts the IDEC expression vector N5KG1 used to express humanized and chimeric antibodies derived from 24-31.

- 23 -

Figure 2a contains results of a B cell proliferation assay which contacts human PBLs with soluble gp39-CD8, recombinant human IL-4 and the murine 24-31 antibody or control murine IgG1 monoclonal antibody which demonstrate  
5 that 24-31 antibody inhibits B cell proliferation induced by gp39.

Figure 2B contains results of B cell differentiation assay using mitomycin treated T cells activated with immobilized anti-CD3 cultured in the present of IGD<sup>+</sup> B cells and  
10 different concentrations of the 24-31 antibody which demonstrate that 24-31 antibody inhibits T-cell dependent polyclonal antibody production by human B cells.

Figure 3 contains FACS of non-transfected CHO cells and a gp39 transfectant.

15 Figure 4 contains the amino acid sequence and DNA sequence corresponding to a preferred humanized variable light sequence (including the complementarity determining regions) referred to as VL#1 or preferred humanized variable light sequence (1).

20 Figure 5 contains the amino acid and DNA sequence corresponding to a preferred humanized variable ligand sequence (including the complementarity determining regions) referred to as VL#2 or preferred humanized variable light sequence (2).

25 Figure 6 contains the amino acid and DNA sequence corresponding to a preferred humanized variable heavy sequence (including the complementarity determining regions) referred to as VH#1 of preferred humanized variable heavy sequence (1).

- 24 -

Figure 7 contains the amino acid and DNA sequence of the variable light sequence of 24-31 (non-humanized).

Figure 8 contains the amino acid and DNA sequence of the variable heavy sequence of 24-31 (non-humanized).

5        Figure 9 compares binding of murine 24-31, chimeric 24-31 and a humanized 24-31 antibody to gp39 expressing CHO cells.

10       Figure 10 contains results of a competition assay comparing the binding of 24-31 (biotin) and humanized, chimeric and 24-31 to gp39 expressing CHO cells.

Figure 11 contains results of an assay which measures effects of murine 24-31 and a humanized 24-31 antibody of the invention on human IgM production by B cells cultured in the presence of mitomycin C treated T cells.

15       Figure 12 contains results of an assay comparing binding of two humanized antibodies of the present invention to gp39 expressing CHO cells.

Figure 13 contains the Scatchard plot for murine 24-31.

20       Figure 14 contains the Scatchard plot for humanized Version 1.

Figure 15 contains the Scatchard plot for humanized Version 2.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

25       Prior to setting forth the invention, definitions of certain terms which are used in this disclosure are set forth below:

Humanized antibody - This will refer to an antibody derived from a non-human antibody, typically murine, that



- 25 -

retains or substantially retains the antigen-binding properties of the parent antibody but which is less immunogenic in humans. This may be achieved by various methods including (a) grafting the entire non-human variable domains onto human constant regions to generate chimeric antibodies, (b) grafting only the non-human CDRs onto human framework and constant regions with or without retention of critical framework residues, or (c) transplanting the entire non-human variable domains, but "cloaking" them with a human-like section by replacement of surface residues. Such methods are disclosed in Jones et al, Morrison et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*, 81:6851-6855 (1984); Morrison and Oi, *Adv. Immunol.*, 44:65-92 (1988); Verhoeyen et al, *Science*, 239:1534-1536 (1988); Padlan, *Molec. Immun.*, 28:489-498 (1991); Padlan, *Molec. Immun.*, 31(3):169-217 (1994), all of which are incorporated by reference.

Complementarity Determining Region, or CDR - The term CDR, as used herein, refers to amino acid sequences which together define the binding affinity and specificity of the natural Fv region of a native immunoglobulin binding site as delineated by Kabat et al (1991).

Framework Region - The term FR, as used herein, refers to amino acid sequences interposed between CDRs. These portions of the antibody serve to hold the CDRs in appropriate orientation (allows for CDRs to bind antigen).

Constant Region - The portion of the antibody molecule which confers effector functions. In the present invention, murine constant regions are substituted by human constant regions. The constant regions of the subject

- 26 -

chimeric or humanized antibodies are derived from human immunoglobulins. The heavy chain constant region can be selected from any of the five isotypes: alpha, delta, epsilon, gamma or mu. Further, heavy chains of various subclasses (such as the IgG subclasses of heavy chains) are responsible for different effector functions and thus, by choosing the desired heavy chain constant region, chimeric antibodies with desired effector function can be produced. Preferred constant regions are gamma 1 (IgG1), gamma 3 (IgG3) and gamma 4 (IgG4). More preferred is an Fc region of the gamma 1 (IgG1) isotype. The light chain constant region can be of the kappa or lambda type, preferably of the kappa type.

Chimeric antibody - This is an antibody containing sequences derived from two different antibodies, which typically are of different species. Most typically chimeric antibodies comprise human and murine antibody fragments, generally human constant and murine variable regions.

Immunogenicity - A measure of the ability of a targeting protein or therapeutic moiety to elicit an immune response (humoral or cellular) when administered to a recipient. The present invention is concerned with the immunogenicity of the subject humanized antibodies or fragments thereof.

Humanized or chimeric antibody of reduced immunogenicity - This refers to an antibody or humanized antibody exhibiting reduced immunogenicity relative to the parent antibody, e.g., the 24-31 antibody.

- 27 -

Humanized antibody substantially retaining the binding properties of the parent antibody - This refers to a humanized or chimeric antibody which retains the ability to specifically bind the antigen recognized by the parent antibody used to produce such humanized or chimeric antibody. Humanized or chimeric antibodies which substantially retain the binding properties of 24-31 will bind to human gp39. Preferably the humanized or chimeric antibody will exhibit the same or substantially the same antigen-binding affinity and avidity as the parent antibody. Ideally, the affinity of the antibody will not be less than 10% of the parent antibody affinity, more preferably not less than about 30%, and most preferably the affinity will not be less than 50% of the parent antibody. Methods for assaying antigen-binding affinity are well known in the art and include half-maximal binding assays, competition assays, and Scatchard analysis. Suitable antigen binding assays are described in this application.

The present invention is directed to novel humanized monoclonal antibodies which bind human gp39 and their use as therapeutic agents. The present invention is further directed toward nucleic acid sequences which encode said humanized antibodies, and their expression in recombinant host cells.

More specifically, the present invention is directed toward humanized antibodies derived from murine antibody 24-31 which specifically binds to human gp39.

Murine antibody 24-31 is a murine antibody raised against human gp39 which functionally inactivates gp39 both

- 28 -

in vitro and in vivo. Therefore, it possesses properties which render it potentially useful for treatment of diseases wherein gp39 inactivation and/or modulation or inhibition of the gp39/CD40 interaction is desirable. In particular, such diseases include autoimmune diseases such as, e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, ITP, diabetes, and systemic lupus erythematosus as well as non-autoimmune diseases such as graft-versus-host disease and graft rejection.

10           However, while murine antibody 24-31 possesses functional properties which render it potentially suitable as a therapeutic agent, it possesses several potential disadvantages. Namely, because it is of murine origin it potentially will be immunogenic in humans. Also, because it  
15           contains murine constant sequences, it will likely not exhibit the full range of human effector functions and will probably be more rapidly cleared if administered to humans. While such disadvantages should not be problematic in the treatment of some disease conditions or persons, they pose  
20           substantial concern if the disease treated is of a chronic or recurrent nature. Examples of recurrent or chronic diseases include, e.g., autoimmune diseases, wherein the host continually or chronically exhibits an autoimmune reaction against self-antigens.

25           Therefore, in order to alleviate the disadvantages associated with murine antibody 24-31, namely potential immunogenicity in humans and decrease of human effector functions, the present inventors desired to produce improved, humanized derivatives of the murine 24-31 antibody.

- 29 -

While this was the goal of the present invention, the desired result was not of a routine or predictable nature. Humanization of antibodies requires the careful selection of amino acid residues which are to be modified, and the  
5 judicious selection of residues which are to be substituted therefor. This is because modification of antibody variable regions, even those involving a few amino acid residues, may cause substantial deleterious effects on antigen binding. For example, humanized antibodies may exhibit  
10 substantially reduced antigen affinity and/or antigen-specificity in relation to the parent antibody.

As noted *supra*, different methods of humanization of antibodies, including murine antibodies have been reported in the literature. See, e.g., Padlan, *Molec. Immunol.*,  
15 31(3):169-217 (1994); Padlan, *Molec. Immunol.*, 28:484-498 (1991); Morrison and Oi, *Adv. Immunol.*, 44:65-92 (1988), all of which references are incorporated by reference in their entirety herein. These methods include in particular humanization by CDR grafting (Jones et al, *Nature*, 321:522-  
20 525 (1986); Verhoeyen et al, *Science*, 239:1534-1539 (1988); and the more tailored approach of Padlan, *Molec. Immunol.*, 28:489 (1991) and Padlan, *Molec. Immunol.*, 31:169 (1994) which involves the selection of non-essential framework amino acid residues and their modification by appropriate  
25 substitution mutation. These references are incorporated by reference in their entirety herein.

As noted, CDR grafting techniques, while successful in some instances, may substantially adversely affect the affinity of the resultant humanized antibodies. This is

- 30 -

believed to occur because some framework residues affect or are essential for and at least affect antigen binding. Our technique; Padlan (1994) (*Id.*) is more refined because we retain only those murine framework residues which we deem  
5 critical to the preservation of the antibody combining site while keeping the surface properties of the molecule as human as possible. Accordingly, this technique has the potential of producing humanized antibodies which retain the antigen-binding characteristics of the parent antibody.  
10 Because of this, this technique was selected by the present inventors as the means by which humanized antibodies derived from murine antibody 24-31 specific to human gp39 would potentially be obtained.

The cloning of the variable regions of 24-31  
15 (described in detail in the examples *infra*) resulted in the identification of the  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences utilized by the 24-31 antibody respectively shown in **Figure 7** and **Figure 8**. After sequencing, the variable regions were then humanized. As noted, this was effected substantially according to the  
20 method of Padlan (1994) (*Id.*), incorporated by reference *supra*.

This method generally comprises replacement of the non-human framework by human framework residues, while retaining only those framework residues that we deem critical to the preservation of antigen binding properties.  
25 Ideally, this methodology will confer a human-like character on the surface of the xenogeneic antibody thus rendering it less immunogenic while retaining the interior and

- 31 -

contacting residues which affect its antigen-binding properties.

More specifically, the 24-31 V<sub>K</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> sequences set forth in **Figures 7 and 8** were humanized by comparison to human antibodies of reported sequence, which are referred to as "templates."

Specifically, the 24-31 V<sub>K</sub> was humanized using as templates:

(a) For VL#1, the human V-Kappa subgroup I sequences, e.g., DEN and the like, as well as the germline 012 (see Cox et al, *Eur. J. Immunol.* 24:827-836 (1994)), and for VL#2, the human V-Kappa subgroup IV sequences, e.g., LEN. Such template sequences are known and are reported in Kabat et al (1991) (*Id.*) or GenBank.

The 24-31 V<sub>H</sub> #1 was humanized using as templates

(a) the human V<sub>H</sub> subgroup IV sequence, 58p2 and  
(b) (GenBank Accession No.) Z18320 and the germline 3d75d (S. van der Maarel et al, *J. Immunol.*, 150:2858-2868 (1993)).

Such template variable heavy antibody sequences are also known and are reported in Kabat et al, "Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest," 5th Ed., NIH (1991) and in GenBank.

The template human variable heavy and light sequences were selected based on a number of different criteria, including, in particular, high degree of sequence similarity with 24-31 overall, as well as similarity in the "important" residues, i.e., those which are believed to be comprised in the V<sub>L</sub>:V<sub>H</sub> interface; those which are in contact

- 32 -

with the complementarity determining regions, or which are inwardly pointing. Also, the templates were selected so as to potentially preserve the electrostatic charge of the 24-31 F<sub>v</sub> as much as possible, and also so as to preserve  
5 glycines, prolines and other specific amino acid residues which are believed to affect antigen binding.

This methodology resulted in the following preferred humanized V<sub>L</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> heavy sequences derived from the 24-31 antibody which are set forth below in **Table 1** and **Table 2**.  
10 As discussed above, the invention further embraces equivalents and variants of these preferred humanized sequences, e.g., those containing one or more conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantially affect gp39 binding. The complementarity determining regions are identified in **Figures 7** and **8** which contain the entire  
15 variable heavy and light chain CDR sequences of the parent (non-humanized) 24-31 antibody.



TABLE 1

HUMANIZED 24-31 VL SEQUENCES

	10	20	40	60	70	80
24-31	DIVMTQSPQKFMSTSVGDRVSITC	KASQNVITAVA	WYQOKPGQSPKLLIY	SASNRYT	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISNMQSEDLADYFC	QQYNSYPYT

5

1.00

FGGGTKLEIK

(1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRTITC KASQNVITAVA WYQOKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT  
FGGGTKLEIK

(2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQOKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEADVADYFC QQYNSYPYT  
FGGGTKLEIK

10

(3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVTITC KASQNVITAVA WYQOKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT  
FGGGTKLEIK

(4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQOKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEADVADYFC QQYNSYPYT  
FGGGTKLEIK

TABLE 2

## HUMANIZED 24-31 VH SEQUENCES

	10	20	30	40	70	82abc	90
24-31	EVQLQESGPGSLVKPSQTL	SLTCSVTGDSIT	NGFWI	WIRKPPGNKLEYMG	YISYSGSTYYNP	SLKS	RISITRDTSQNQFYLQLNSVTTEDTGTYC
	RSYGRTPYYFDF	WGQGTTLTVSS					
(1)	EVQLQESGPGSLVKPSQTL	SLTCTVSGDSIT	NGFWI	WIRKPPGNKLEYMG	YISYSGSTYYNP	SLKS	RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSVTAADTG
	RSYGRTPYYFDF	WGQGTTLTVSS					
(2)	EVQLQESGPGSLVKPSQTL	SLTCTVSGDSIT	NGFWI	WIRKPPGNKLEYMG	YISYSGSTYYNP	SLKS	RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSVTAADTG
	RSYGRTPYYFDF	WGQGTTLTVSS					
(3)	EVQLQESGPGSLVKPSQTL	SLTCAVSGDSIT	NGFWI	WIRKPPGNKLEYMG	YISYSGSTYYNP	SLKS	RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSVTAADTG
	RSYGRTPYYFDF	WGQGTTLTVSS					
(4)	EVQLQESGPGSLVKPSQTL	SLTCAVSGDSIT	NGFWI	WIRKPPGNKLEYMG	YISYSGSTYYNP	SLKS	RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSVTAADTG
	RSYGRTPYYFDF	WGQGTTLTVSS					

5

10

- 35 -

As can be seen therefrom, four preferred humanized framework sequences were designed for both the  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  chains. Therefore, there are 16 different possible humanized 24-31 antibodies which may be synthesized using the  
5 above-identified humanized  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  24-31 sequences, excluding variants and equivalents containing conservative modifications.

Humanized 24-31 antibodies containing these humanized variable heavy and light sequences may be obtained by  
10 recombinant methods. It is expected that humanized sequences which contain any combination of the above preferred humanized variable sequences will result in humanized antibodies which bind human gp39. Moreover, based on these sequences, the order of preference using the numbering set forth in **Table 1** and **Table 2** is expected to be as  
15 follows:

- (1) #1  $V_L$  with #1  $V_H$  (Version 1)
- (2) #2  $V_L$  with #1  $V_H$  (Version 2)
- (3) #1  $V_L$  with #2  $V_H$  (Version 3)
- 20 (4) #2  $V_L$  with #2  $V_H$  (Version 4)

The above-identified humanized  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  sequences may be further modified, e.g., by the introduction of one or more additional substitution modifications and also by the addition of other amino acids. Additional modifications  
25 will be selected which do not adversely affect antigen (gp39) binding. For example, the inventors contemplate further modification of the  $V_H$  chain by substitution of one or more of residues 34, 43, 44 and 68 (according to Kabat numbering scheme) Kabat et al (1991) (*Id.*). Also, the

- 36 -

inventors contemplate modification of residue 85 of the V<sub>L</sub> chain. Based on the structural features of the antibody combining site, it is believed that modification of such residues should also not adversely impact antigen binding.

Moreover, it is expected that the introduction of one or more conservative amino acid substitutions should not adversely affect gp39 binding.

So as to better describe the subject humanized 24-31, V<sub>H</sub> and V<sub>L</sub> sequences, the preferred humanized framework sequences are also set forth in **Table 3** below, which compares these sequences to the template human variable heavy and light framework sequences, i.e., human DEN VK1, Human 012/V36 germline, human LEN VKIV, human 58p2, human Z18320, and human 3d75d as well as to the unhumanized murine 24-31 V<sub>H</sub> and V<sub>L</sub> framework sequences.

**TABLE 3****VK Framework Region Comparisons - Humanized Anti-gp39**

	FR1	FR2
Human 012/V3b germline	DIQMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITC	WYQQKPGKAPKLLIY
Human DEN VKI	-----T-----	-----E---V---
Murine 24-31	--V---QK-M-T-----S---	-----QS-----
Padlan VL#1 humanized	--V-----	-----S-----
	FR3	FR4
Human 012/V3b	GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFATYYC	
Human DEN VK1	-----E-----SD-----	FGQGTKLEIK
Murine 24-31	---D-----NM-SE-L-D-F-	--G-----
Padlan VL#1	---D-----D-F-	--G-----

- 37 -

TABLE 3 (Continued)

	FR1	FR2
Human LEN VKIV	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC	WYQQKPGQPPKLLIY
Murine 24-31	-----QKFMST-V-D-VS-T-	-----S-----
5 Padlan VL#2 humanized	-----	-----S-----
	FR3	FR4
Human LEN VKIV	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVYYC	FGQGTKLEIK
Murine 24-31	-----NM-S--L-D-F-	--G-----
Padlan VL#2	-----D-F-	--G-----
10	FR1	
Human 58p2	QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSLTCTVSGGSIS	
Murine 24-31	E-----S---Q-----S-T-D--T	
Padlan VH#1 humanized	E-----D--T	
Human Z18320 GenBank	-----Q-----	
15		
Human 3d75d germline	-----Q-----	
Padlan VH#2 humanized	E-----Q-----D--T	

FR2

FR3

- 38 -

	Human 58p2	WIRQPPGKGGLEWIG	RVTISVDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCAR
	Murine 24-31	---KF--NK--YM-	-IS-TR---Q---Y-Q-N---TE--GT----C
	Padlan VH#1	---K---NK--YM-	-IS--R-----G-----C
	Human Z18320	-----A-----	-----
5	Human 3d75d	----H-----	-----
	Padlan VH#2	---KH--NK--YM-	-IS--R-----G-----C
	Human 58p2	WGQGTMTVTSS	
	Murine 24-31	-----TL----	
	Padlan VH#1	-----TL----	
10	Human Z18320	-----	
	Padlan VH#2	-----TL----	

In order to produce humanized antibodies, DNA sequences are synthesized which encode for the afore-identified humanized  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences. As noted, taking into account these four humanized  $V_L$  sequences, and four humanized  $V_H$  sequences, there are 16 potential humanized antigen combining sites which may be synthesized. Also, there are even more potential humanized antigen combining sites taking into account the potential substitution of residues 34, 43, 44 and 68 of the humanized  $V_H$  and residue 85 of the humanized  $V_L$  by other amino acid residues and/or the potential incorporation of conservative substitution mutations. Two of the preferred humanized variable light sequences (1) and (2) and a preferred humanized variable heavy sequence

- 39 -

(1) including the complementarity determining regions and corresponding DNA sequences are set forth in **Figures 4, 5 and 6**, respectively.

Methods for synthesizing DNA encoding for a protein of known sequence are well known in the art. Using such methods, DNA sequences which encode the subject humanized  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences are synthesized, and then expressed in vector systems suitable for expression of recombinant antibodies. This may be effected in any vector system which provides for the subject humanized  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences to be expressed as a fusion protein with human constant domain sequences and associate to produce functional (antigen binding) antibodies.

Expression vectors and host cells suitable for expression of recombinant antibodies and humanized antibodies in particular, are well known in the art.

The following references are representative of methods and vectors suitable for expression of recombinant immunoglobulins which are incorporated by reference herein:

Weidle et al, *Gene*, 51:21-29 (1987); Dorai et al, *J. Immunol.*, 13(12):4232-4241 (1987); De Waele et al, *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 176:287-295 (1988); Colcher et al, *Cancer Res.*, 49:1738-1745 (1989); Wood et al, *J. Immunol.*, 145(a):3011-3016 (1990); Bulens et al, *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 195:235-242 (1991); Beggington et al, *Biol. Technology*, 10:169 (1992); King et al, *Biochem. J.*, 281:317-323 (1992); Page et al, *Biol. Technology*, 9:64 (1991); King et al, *Biochem. J.*, 290:723-729 (1993); Chaudary et al, *Nature*, 339:394-397 (1989); Jones et al, *Nature*, 321:522-525 (1986); Morrison

- 40 -

and Oi, *Adv. Immunol.*, 44:65-92 (1988); Benhar et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 91:12051-12055 (1994); Singer et al, *J. Immunol.*, 150:2844-2857 (1993); Cooto et al, *Hybridoma*, 13(3):215-219 (1994); Queen et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 86:10029-10033 (1989); Caron et al, *Cancer Res.*, 32:6761-6767 (1992); Cotoma et al, *J. Immunol. Meth.*, 152:89-109 (1992). Moreover, vectors suitable for expression of recombinant antibodies are commercially available.

Host cells known to be capable of expressing functional immunoglobulins include by way of example mammalian cells such as Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells, COS cells, myeloma cells, bacteria such as *Escherichia coli*, yeast cells such as *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, among other host cells. Of these, CHO cells are used by many researchers given their ability to effectively express and secrete immunoglobulins.

Essentially, recombinant expression of humanized antibodies are effected by one of two general methods. In the first method, the host cells are transfected with a single vector which provides for the expression of both heavy and light variable sequences fused to selected constant regions. In the second method, host cells are transfected with two vectors, which respectively provide for expression of either the variable heavy or light sequence fused to selected constant regions.

Human constant domain sequences are well known in the art, and have been reported in the literature. Preferred human  $V_L$  sequences includes the Kappa and lambda constant light sequences. Preferred human heavy constant sequences



- 41 -

include human gamma 1, human gamma 2, human gamma 3, human gamma 4 and mutated versions thereof which provide for altered effect or function, e.g. enhanced *in vivo* half-life and reduced Fc receptor binding.

5 Preferred modifications of the human gamma 4 constant domain include P and/or E modifications, which respectively refer to the change of a leucine to a glutamic acid at position 236 and/or the change of a serine to a proline (Kabat numbering) at position 229 such as described in  
10 commonly assigned Attorney Docket No. 012712-165 filed on September 6, 1995 and incorporated by reference in its entirety herein.

A particularly preferred vector system comprises the expression vectors described in commonly assigned U.S.  
15 Serial No. 08/476,237 filed June 7, 1995, Serial No. 08/397,072, filed January 25, 1995 and 07/912,122 filed July 10, 1992, 07/886,281 filed March 23, 1992, and 07/735,064 filed July 25, 1991, all incorporated by reference in their entirety.

20 In particular, these applications describe vector systems for the production of recombinant antibodies, referred to as TCAE 5.2 and TCAE 6 which comprise the following:

- 1) Four transcriptional cassettes in tandem order:  
25 (a) a human immunoglobulin light chain constant region. In TCAE 5.2 this is the human immunoglobulin Kappa light chain constant region (Kabat numbering amino acids 108-214, allotype Km 3) and in TCAE 6 the human immunoglobulin light chain lambda constant region (Kabat numbering

- 42 -

amino acids 108-215, genotype Oz minus, Mcg minus, Ke minus allotype).

(b) a human immunoglobulin heavy chain constant region; in both constructs the human immunoglobulin heavy chain is a gamma/constant region (Kabat numbering amino acids 114-478 allotype Gm1a, Gm12).

(c) DHFR; containing its own eukaryotic promoter and polyadenylation region; and

(d) NEO; also containing its own eukaryotic promoter and polyadenylation region.

2) The human immunoglobulin light and heavy chain cassettes contain synthetic signal sequences for secretion of the immunoglobulin chains; and

3) The human immunoglobulin light and heavy chain cassettes contain specific DNA links which allow for the insertion of light and heavy immunoglobulin variable regions which maintain the translational reading frame and do not alter the amino acids normally found in immunoglobulin chains.

These vectors are preferably utilized in CHO cells. The subject antibodies are preferably expressed in the above-described vector systems.

However, the subject humanized antibody sequences derived from the number 24-31 antibody may be expressed in any vector system which provides for the expression of functional antibodies, i.e., those which bind gp39 antigen.

In particular, the inventors elected to express the subject humanized  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences, as well as the native (unmodified)  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  sequences derived from 24-31 in CHO

- 43 -

cells using the N5KG1 expression vector which contains human Kappa and human gamma 1 constant regions. The N5KG1 expression vector is depicted schematically in **Figure 1**. As hoped, the chimeric antibody derived from 24-31, when expressed in CHO cells binds gp39 (by demonstrated binding to CHO- gp39 transfectant). Also, several humanized antibodies of the invention derived from 24-31 when expressed using this vector system resulted in functional (gp39 binding) antibodies.

10       The present invention is further described through presentation of the following examples. These examples are offered by way of illustration and not by way of limitation.

#### EXAMPLE 1

##### 15   Selection of 24-31 Antibody for Humanization.

Accumulating evidence in animal models indicates that anti-gp39 administration prevents a variety of autoimmune processes and interferes with allograft rejection. These results provide compelling evidence that antibodies to human gp39 may have significant therapeutic value in the management of autoimmune disease and the transplantation of allogeneic tissue and organs in humans. A monoclonal antibody (mAb) specific for human gp39 has been reported (Lederman et al, *J. Immunol.*, 199:3817 (1992)), and its functional activity in blocking gp39-CD40 interactions *in vitro* has been evaluated. To gain greater insights into the functional impact of anti-gp39 antibodies on the human

- 44 -

immune system, a panel of anti-human gp39 mAbs was generated. From this panel, one mAb appeared superior and was extensively tested for functional inactivation of gp39 *in vitro* and *in vivo*.

5           More specifically, a panel of 6 murine (all IgG1) anti-gp39 antibodies was generated by immunization with a soluble fusion protein of human gp39 (gp39-CD8), followed by challenge with activated human peripheral blood T cells. Flow cytometric analysis of human peripheral blood T cells  
10 demonstrated that the mAbs recognized a cell surface molecule expressed on activated (PMA/ionomycin), but not resting, CD3<sup>+</sup> T cells, and that the pattern of reactivity was similar to that seen with a recombinant CD40 fusion protein (CD40-Ig) (data not shown). Immunoprecipitation of [<sup>35</sup>S]  
15 metabolically labeled activated human peripheral blood T cells revealed that each of the 6 mAbs precipitated a molecule of similar size (33 kDa) to that precipitated by CD40-Ig. Finally, binding of CD40-Ig to gp39 was blocked in the presence of the antibodies indicating recognition of  
20 the same molecule, further confirming their specificity. Although all 6 mAbs were capable of blocking gp39 function, one mAb, 24-31, was selected for extensive analysis.

#### EXAMPLE 2

**T cell-dependent B cell proliferation and**  
25 **differentiation (Ig production) is blocked by anti-gp39.**

A number of studies have provided evidence that signals delivered through CD40 by its ligand, gp39, induce B cell activation, proliferation, differentiation, and isotype switching. To determine if the anti-gp39 24-31 mAb

- 45 -

blocked gp39 function, B cells were cultured with a soluble fusion protein of gp39 (gp39-CD8) in the presence or absence of 24-31, and the B cell proliferative response was assessed by <sup>3</sup>H-thymidine incorporation. The results, shown in **Figure 2A**, demonstrate that gp39-CD8 induced vigorous proliferation of B cells. The presence of anti-gp39 24-31 mAb completely ablated B cell proliferation induced by gp39-CD8 at concentrations as low as 2.5 µg/ml. To determine whether 24-31 interfered with T cell-induced B cell differentiation, B cells were co-cultured with anti-CD3 activated T cells in the presence or absence of 24-31. Polyclonal IgM, IgG, and IgA production was assessed after 12 days. As shown in **Figure 2B**, the addition of 24-31 inhibited polyclonal IgM, IgG, and IgA antibody production (90-99%). These results confirm previous reports establishing the requirement for gp39-CD40 interactions in T cell-dependent B cell differentiation (Nishioka et al, *J. Immunol.*, 153:1027 (1994), and further demonstrate the use of newly characterized anti-human gp39 24-31 mAb in blocking gp39 function.

### EXAMPLE 3

**Anti-gp39 blocks in vivo tetanus toxoid specific antibody production in SCID mice reconstituted with human PBL.**

Numerous studies have established that the human immune system can be studied in vivo under experimental conditions through the use of severe combined immunodeficiency (*scid*) mice engrafted with human peripheral blood lymphocytes (hu-PBL-*scid* mice) (Mosler et al, *Nature*,

- 46 -

335:256 (1988); McCune et al, *Science*, 241:1632 (1988).

Long-term chimerism is achieved in *scid* mice by injection with human PBL, and antigen-specific secondary antibody responses are detected in hu-PBL-*scid* mice challenged in

5 *vivo* with antigen (Carlsson et al, *J. Immunol.*, 148:1065 (1992); Duchosal et al, *Cell Immunol.*, 139:468 (1992)).

This system was exploited to evaluate the immunosuppressive effects of *in vivo* anti-gp39 administration on the immune responses elicited by human T and B cells.

10 Experiments, the results of which are contained in **Figure 2B**, demonstrated that blockade of gp39 function by 24-31 inhibited T cell-dependent polyclonal Ig production by human B cells *in vitro*. To determine whether 24-31 could also inhibit antigen specific B cell antibody produc-

15 tion *in vivo*, C.B-17 *scid/scid* mice injected i.p. with human PBL (hu-PBL-*scid*) and immunized with tetanus toxoid (TT) were treated with 24-31 or PBS, and the secondary (IgG) anti-TT antibody response was assessed. Immunization of hu-PBL-*scid* with TT resulted in detectable levels of IgG

20 anti-TT antibody within 14 days post immunization in most animals (**Table 4**). However, treatment with anti-gp39 (24-31; 250 µg/day, twice weekly) completely ablated the secondary anti-TT antibody response in 9/10 mice examined, demonstrating that *in vivo* blockade of gp39 function also

25 resulted in inhibition of antigen specific humoral responses.

- 47 -

Recipient Strain*	Treatment†	Anti-Tetanus Antibody (O.D. $\pm$ SE)§ (Frequency of Mice Containing Anti-Tetanus Antibody)			
		days post immunization			
		7d	14d	21d	28d
C.B-17 <i>scid/scid</i>	PBS	<0.02 (0/10)	2.30 $\pm$ .042 (7/10)*	.224 $\pm$ .040 (8/10)**	.137 $\pm$ .007 (4/10)
	anti-gp39	.162 (1/10)	<0.02 (0/10)	<0.02 (0/10)	<0.02 (0/10)

5 Table 4. Ablation of the secondary anti-tetanus antibody response following engraftment of human PBL in C.B-17 *scid/scid* mice immunized with tetanus toxoid.\* Four-six week old C.B-17-*scid/scid* mice were injected i.p. with  $20 \times 10^6$  human PBL and 0.25 ml tetanus toxoid.

10 †Anti-gp39 24-31 or PBS (250  $\mu$ g/injection) was administered i.p. twice weekly throughout the entire experiment.

15 §The level of human anti-tetanus toxoid antibody in the serum was determined weekly by ELISA. All mice with serum levels of human anti-tetanus toxoid antibody > 0.100 O.D. at a 1:10 dilution were considered positive. Only positive mice were used in the calculation of the mean  $\pm$  SE values included in the table. The level of human anti-tetanus toxoid in sera from pre-immune mice not immunized with tetanus toxoid was < 0.02 O.D. Data are presented as mean  $\pm$  SE.

\*Significantly different ( $p=0.222$ ) than the anti-gp39 treated group.

\*\*Significantly different ( $p<0.001$ ) than the anti-gp39 treated group.

20

#### EXAMPLE 4

Anti-gp39 treatment does not inhibit the antigen-specific T cell proliferative response of hu-PBL-*scid* spleen cells.

To determine whether treatment of hu-PBL-*scid* mice with anti-gp39 altered the responsiveness of antigen-specific T cells *in vivo*, the proliferative response of spleen cells from hu-PBL-*scid* mice immunized with TT and treated with 24-31 was assessed *in vitro*. Spleen cells from control or anti-gp39 treated hu-PBL-*scid* mice were cultured with TT or medium alone, and the proliferative response was

25

- 48 -

assessed by  $^3\text{H}$ -thymidine incorporation after 6 days. **Table 5** summarizes the results of one such experiment. Hu-PBL-*scid* mice treated with anti-gp39 responded similarly to *in vitro* stimulation with TT as did hu-PBL-*scid* mice which were untreated (5/10 vs. 3/10 responding mice). Experiments using NOD/LtSz-*scid/scid* mice as recipients yielded similar results, although anti-TT antibodies were undetectable in these mice (data not shown). These data demonstrate that treatment with anti-gp39 does not result in deletion or functional inactivation of antigen-specific T cells in hu-PBL-*scid* mice and support the contention that inhibition of TT specific antibody responses by anti-gp39 is due to blockade of gp39-CD40 interactions and subsequent B cell responses rather than T cell inactivation.

15

Recipient Strain*	Treatment¶	Frequency of Responding Mice§
C.B-17 <i>scid/scid</i>	PBS	3/10
	anti-gp39	5/10
NOD/LtSz- <i>scid/scid</i>	PBS	5/10
	anti-gp39	6/10



- 49 -

Table 5. Anti-gp39 treatment does not alter the anti-tetanus T cell proliferative response following engraftment of human PBL in C.B-17-*scid/scid* or NOD/LtSz-*scid/scid* mice immunized with tetanus toxoid.

5 \*Four-six week old C.B-17-*scid/scid* or NOD/LtSz-*scid/scid* mice were injected i.p. with  $20 \times 10^6$  human PBL and 0.25 ml tetanus toxoid.

¶Anti-gp39 24-31 or PBS (250  $\mu$ g/injection) was administered i.p. twice weekly throughout the entire experiment.  
10 §Spleen cells from mice injected with human PBL and immunized with tetanus toxoid were cultured at a concentration of  $1 \times 10^5$  cells/ml in the presence of media alone or tetanus toxoid (2.5 or 5.0  $\mu$ g/ml). Proliferation was assessed by  $^3$ H-thymidine incorporation after 6d. Stimula-  
15 tion indices were calculated by the following formula"  
S.I. = cpm tetanus - cpm medium/cpm medium. S.I. of > than 2.0 was considered positive.

#### EXAMPLE 5

##### Generation of a gp39 CHO transfectant cell line.

20 Recently, a CHO transfectant that constitutively expresses cell-surface gp39 was generated to use as a reagent for the humanized anti-gp39 24-31 binding studies proposed in this application. The full-length gp39 gene (Hollenbaugh et al, *Immunol. Rev.*, 138:23 (1994)) was  
25 amplified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) of phytohemag-

- 50 -

glutinin-activated human PBL and cloned into IDEC's INPEP4 vector under the transcriptional control of the cytomegalovirus (CMV) promoter and enhancer elements. A CHO transfectant was established and amplified in 50 nM methotrexate. The transfectant, 50D4, was shown to express cell-surface gp39 by ELISA (data not shown) and FACS analysis (Figure 3).

#### EXAMPLE 6

##### High-level expression of antibodies using a CHO expression system.

IDEC's proprietary N5KG1 expression vector is used in CHO cells for expression of the humanized anti-gp39 24-31 antibody. This vector is depicted schematically in Figure 1. High-level expression of recombinant antibodies is consistently obtained in CHO cells using this vector and similar vectors. Using these vectors, a high percentage of G418 resistant clones, 5-10%, are found to express significant amounts of recombinant proteins (1-10 mg/l of antibody). These are usually single plasmid copy integrants, and can easily be amplified using methotrexate to obtain 30-100 pg/cell/day of secreted immunoglobulin. Table 6 lists the antibody levels obtained before and after gene amplification of 3 antibodies expressed in CHO cells utilizing this system.

- 51 -

Antibody	before ampli- fication mg/l	after amplifica- tion in spinner flask mg/l	after amplifica- tion in fermentor mg/l
Anti-CD4 $\gamma$ 1	1-2	100-110	950
Anti-CD4 $\gamma$ 4	3-4	125-150	N.D.
Anti-CD20	5-10	200-300	650

5 Table 6. Antibody production levels using IDEC's CHO expression technology.

#### EXAMPLE 7

##### Cloning of 24-31 V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> DNA Sequences

The anti-gp39 24-31 V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> gene segments were cloned and sequenced. Following analyses of their sequences,  
 10 humanized versions of the V region gene segments were designed. The corresponding DNA sequences were synthesized and cloned into a high-level expression vector containing human constant region genes. A CHO transfectant producing the humanized 24-31 antibody is then established. To  
 15 confirm that the humanized version of the anti-gp39 antibody retains its gp39 binding affinity, the relative affinities of the murine and humanized antibodies were compared in direct binding and competition assays. In addition, the ability of the humanized 24-31 to block CD40 binding to  
 20 gp39 and to inhibit T cell-dependent antibody production is evaluated.

- 52 -

# 1. Cloning of the 24-31 V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> gene segments

a. Preparation of cDNA. PolyA<sup>+</sup> mRNA was prepared from 2 x 10<sup>6</sup> cells each of the 24-31 hybridoma and the NS1 cell line, (Carroll et al, *Mol. Immunol.*, 10:991  
5 (1988)), the fusion partner used in the generation of the 24-31 hybridoma, utilizing an Invitrogen Corporation Micro-Fast Track™ mRNA isolation kit, according to the manufacturer's protocol. First strand cDNA was synthesized utilizing 50 pmoles oligo-dT and 5 units M-MLV reverse transcriptase (Promega) (Sambrook et al, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, 2nd Ed., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press (1989)) followed by Sephadex G-25 chromatography.

b. PCR amplification Of V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> cDNA. 24-31 and NS1 cDNA were amplified by PCR using a panel of 5'  
15 primers specific for V<sub>k</sub> or V<sub>H</sub> leader sequences in combination with 3' constant region primers. The panel of 5'V<sub>H</sub> primers are identical to those described by Jones and Bendig (*Bio/Technol.*, 9:88 (1991); Errata, *Bio/Technol.*, 9:579 (1991)). The panel of 5'V<sub>k</sub> primers (Jones et al,  
20 (*Id.*)) were modified to convert the Sal I cloning site recognition sequences (GTCGAC) into Bgl II recognition sequences (AGATCT) to facilitate the cloning of the amplified gene segments into IDEC's N5KG1 expression vector (See **Figure 1**). The 3' V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> primers contain a Bsi WI  
25 cloning site sequence at amino acid positions 108-109 (numbering according to Kabat et al, "Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest," 5th Ed., NIH (1991)) and a Nhe I cloning site sequence at positions 114-115, respectively, and have the following sequences:

- 53 -

TGCAGCATCCGTACGTTTGATTCCAGCTT(C<sub>k</sub>) and  
GGGGGTGTCGTGCTAGCTG(A/C) (G/A)GAGAC(G/A)GTGA (C<sub>γ</sub>1). This  
primer panel has been previously used by the Assignee to  
amplify and clone the C2B8 anti-CD20 antibody (Nishioka et  
5 al, *J. Immunol.*, 153:1027 (1994)) and numerous other mouse  
V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> gene segments (data not shown).

In order to determine the correct primer pair for the  
amplification of the 24-31 V<sub>k</sub> and V<sub>H</sub> gene segments, the 24-  
31 cDNA were amplified in 23 individual reactions contain-  
10 ing one of the 11 5'V<sub>k</sub> primers in combination with the C<sub>k</sub>  
primer or one of the 12 5'V<sub>H</sub> primers in combination with the  
C<sub>γ</sub>1 primer. For comparison, NS1 cDNA was amplified using  
the same panel of primers. 1 μl cDNA (1/50 of the cDNA  
sample) was amplified in a 100 μl final volume containing 5  
15 units Taq DNA polymerase (Perkin Elmer), 10 mM Tris-HCl, pH  
8.3, 50 mM KCl, 1.5 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.25 mM each of dCTP, dGTP,  
dATP, and TTP, 50 pmoles 3' constant region primer, and 50  
pmoles 5' primer. The amplification cycle consisted of  
denaturation for 1 minute at 95°C, annealing for 2 minutes  
20 at 50°C, and extension for 2 minutes at 72°C, repeated 34  
times. The amplified products were analyzed by agarose gel  
electrophoresis. The 24-31 PCR reactions yielding a unique  
amplified product for V<sub>k</sub> and for V<sub>H</sub> were repeated and the  
products from duplicate PCR reactions cloned. PCR ampli-  
25 fied products are agarose gel-purified (Sambrook et al,  
*Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, 2nd Ed. (1989)) and  
digested with Bgl II and Bsi WI (for V<sub>k</sub>) or Sal I and Nhe I  
(for V<sub>H</sub>). The products are ligated (Ausabel et al, *Current*

- 54 -

*Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Vol. 2, Greene Publ. Assoc. (1992)) sequentially into IDEC's vector, N5KG1.

Following transformation of *E. coli* XL1-blue cells (Stratagene), plasmid DNA was prepared, and the  $V_k$  and  $V_H$  sequences obtained from the duplicate constructs (sequencing performed by Scripps Research Institute Core Facility, La Jolla, CA). The sequences of the endogenous light and heavy chains of the NS1 fusion partner are known (Carroll et al, *Mol. Immunol.*, 10:991 (1988); Kabat et al, (1991) (Id.)) and were used to distinguish PCR products resulting from the amplification of the 24-31 versus the NS1 fusion partner V regions.

#### EXAMPLE 8

##### Synthesis of gene segments encoding humanized 24-31 V regions.

Humanized versions containing the most preferred humanized 24-31  $V_k$  and  $V_H$  sequences identified in Tables 1 and 2 as humanized  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  (1) were synthesized. Specifically, four pairs of overlapping, complementary oligonucleotides (oligos) encoding the above-identified humanized  $V_k$  or  $V_H$  regions were synthesized (Midland Chemicals) and purified by denaturing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (Ausubel et al, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Vol. 2, Greene Publ. Assoc. (1992)). Each oligo is approximately 100 bases in length and overlap by 20 bases the adjacent complementary oligonucleotide. The  $V_k$  and  $V_H$  5' oligos contain Bgl II and Sal I cloning sites and the 3' oligos possess Bsi WI and Nhe I cloning sites, respectively. Each variable region gene segment was assembled from the syn-

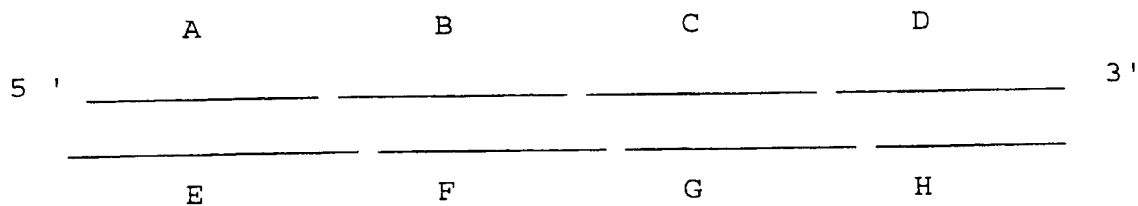
- 55 -

thetic oligos, diagrammed below, using the following procedure (summarized in Watson et al, *Recombinant DNA*, 2nd Ed., Scientif. Amer. Books, NY, NY (1992)). Complementary oligo pairs (A+E, B+F, C+G, D+F) were kinased using 300 pmoles of each primer and T4 polynucleotide kinase (Promega) according to the manufacturer's protocol. The oligos were annealed by heating to 95°C and slow cooling to room temperature. The annealed oligo pairs were ligated (A/E with B/F and C/G with D/H) utilizing 6 units T4 DNA ligase (New England Biolabs). After digestion with the appropriate 5' or 3' cloning site restriction endonuclease, the approximately 200 base pair DNA fragments were purified by electroelution following polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (Sambrook et al, (*Id.*)). The synthetic gene fragments were then inserted into IDEC's proprietary high-level expression vector, N5KG1, under the transcriptional control of the CMV promoter and enhancer elements. The ligation reaction contains the 2 gel-purified fragments (A/E/B/F and C/G/D/H) and N5KG1 at a molar ratio of 100:100:1, respectively. After transformation of XL1-blue cells, plasmid DNA was prepared and the sequences of the synthetic gene segments confirmed. The resulting construct, h24-31, encodes the humanized 24-31 V region segments and human kappa and gamma 1 constant regions. As indicated, this antibody contains the humanized variable heavy and humanized variable light sequences identified in **Table 1** and **Table 2** as the "(1)" sequences, which are predicted to provide for humanized antibody having optimal gp39 properties. In addition, a construct was generated which contains V<sub>L</sub>#2 in combination

- 56 -

with V<sub>H</sub>#1 (version 2 of humanized 24-31). Similar constructs utilizing IDEC's proprietary vectors have been used for high-level expression of IDEC's anti-CD20 (Reff et al, *Blood*, 83:425 (1994)) and anti-CD4 (Newman et al, *Biol.*

5 *Technology*, 10:1455 (1992)) antibodies.



10

#### EXAMPLE 9

### 2. Production and characterization of humanized 24-31

#### a. Generation of CHO transfectants producing humanized 24-31 (version 1 and version 2).

CHO transfectants expressing humanized 24-31 (version 1 or version 2) were generated by electroporation of  $4 \times 10^6$  CHO cells with linearized h24-31 DNA (version 1 or version 2) followed by selection in G418. The cell culture supernatants from G418 resistant clones were assayed for immunoglobulin production by sandwich ELISA employing a goat anti-human kappa to capture the immunoglobulin. Immunoglobulin binding was measured by incubating with a horse radish peroxidase (HRP)-conjugated goat antibody specific for human IgG, followed by HRP substrate, 0.4 mg/ml O-Phenylene-diamine (OPD) in a citrate buffer (9-34 g/l C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>8</sub>O<sub>7</sub> and 14.2 g/l Na<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub>), pH 5.0, including 0.0175% H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>. The plate was read in a Molecular DeviCes "Vmax, kinetic microplate reader" spectrophotometer at 490 nm.



- 57 -

**EXAMPLE 10****b. Characterization of humanized 24-31 (version 1).**

The humanized anti-gp39 24-31 antibody is evaluated initially for direct binding to cell surface gp39 expressed on 50D4, the gp39 CHO transfectant described in **Example 5**. Supernatants from the G418-resistant h24-31 CHO transfectants that produce immunoglobulin are tested for binding to 50D4 cells and, as negative control, to CHO cells. In this assay 50D4,  $1 \times 10^5$  /well, are bound to the bottom of 96 well, poly-L-lysine coated polystyrene plates. The cells are fixed in 0.5% glutaraldehyde in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) for 15 minutes. Plates coated with CHO cells are generated similarly. The cell culture supernatants are added and antibody binding measured using a HRP-conjugated goat anti-human IgG, as described above.

Two assays are used to determine if the humanized 24-31 antibody retains its affinity to gp39 relative to the original murine 24-31 antibody, (i) half-maximal binding concentration and (ii) a competition assay using 50D4 cells. For this purpose the antibodies will be purified on protein A and the concentration of each antibody determined by ELISA by a comparison to isotype matched controls. Half-maximal binding (i) are determined by incubating humanized 24-31 with 50D4 cells at various concentrations from 2  $\mu$ g/ml to 0.1 ng/ml. The concentration resulting in a half-maximal OD 490 reading, as described above, is compared with the half-maximal binding of murine 24-31. In the competition assay (ii) the humanized 24-31 antibody and the murine 24-31 antibody are mixed in various molar ratios

- 58 -

ranging from 100:1 to 1:100, and their ability to compete for binding to 50D4 cells measured. Two sets are run, one where the binding of the humanized antibody will be measured using goat-anti-human IgG (anti-mouse IgG depleted) -  
5 HRP and one where the binding of murine antibody is measured using goat-anti-mouse IgG (anti-human IgG depleted) - HRP. Binding curves, one for the murine and one for the humanized antibody, based on molar ratios, are generated and their relative affinities calculated. These assays  
10 will confirm the anti-gp39 binding properties of the subject humanized antibodies derived from 24-31.

#### EXAMPLE 11

##### **Blocking of CD40-Ig binding to gp39 by humanized 24-31.**

After establishing that humanized anti-gp39 binds to  
15 gp39, an assay is effected to confirm that the humanized anti-gp39 retains its ability to block the binding of the ligand to its receptor. For this purpose, activated human peripheral blood T cells, or the gp39-transfected CHO cells, 50D4, are pretreated with graded concentrations of  
20 murine 24-31 or with humanized 24-31 for 15 minutes at 4°C. Following this preincubation, CD40-Ig-biotin is added and the binding determined by flow cytometry using PE-avidin. Concentrations of mAbs to achieve a 50% reduction in CD40-Ig binding are determined.

- 59 -

**EXAMPLE 12****Blocking of B cell proliferation and differentiation by humanized 24-31.**

To confirm that humanized 24-31 blocks gp39 function,  
5 B cells are cultured with a soluble fusion protein of gp39 (gp39-CD8) in the presence or absence of a range of doses of murine 24-31 or humanized 24-31. B cell proliferative response is assessed by <sup>3</sup>H-thymidine incorporation as shown in Figure 2A.

10 T cell dependent B cell differentiation (Ig production) is blocked by mAbs to gp39. To confirm that the subject humanized 24-31 antibodies are effective in blocking the function of native gp39 expressed on the surface of activated human T cells, the ability of the subject human-  
15 ized 24-31 antibodies inhibit T cell-induced B cell differentiation is assessed. B cells are co-cultured with anti-CD3 activated T cells in the presence or absence of humanized 24-31 and murine 24-31. Polyclonal IgM, IgG, and IgA production is assessed after 12 days (see Figure 2B).  
20 These results will confirm that humanized anti-gp39 can block CD40 binding and interfere with T-cell-dependent B cell activation via CD40.

**EXAMPLE 13****Binding Capacity**

25 This experiment was effected to determine the reactivity of the murine, chimeric, and humanized (version 1) 24-31 antibodies to the gp39 antigen relative to the concentration of antibody.

**Protocol:**

- 60 -

**Plate Preparation**

1. Add 50 of poly-1-lysine to each well on the 96 well plate. Incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature. Flick plates to remove poly-1-lysine.
- 5 2. Wash mgp39-CHO cells (Chinese hamster ovary cells expressing cell surface, membrane gp39) 3 times with HBSS by centrifuging at 1500 rpm for 5 minutes. Resuspend cells in HBSS to  $2 \times 10^6$  cells ml.
3. Add 50  $\mu$ l of cell suspension to each well and centri-  
10 fuge plates at 2000 rpm for 5 minutes.
4. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of ice cold 0.5% glutaraldehyde and incubate for 15 minutes at room temperature.
5. Flick plate and blot to remove excess glutaraldehyde. Add 150  $\mu$ l/well of 100 mM glycine with 0.1% BSA and  
15 incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature. Plates can be used immediately or frozen at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  for future use.

**Binding Assay**

1. Thaw plate and remove glycine buffer.
- 20 2. Serially dilute, 1:2, the test antibodies in dilution buffer starting at 1  $\mu$ g/ml. Transfer 50  $\mu$ g/well of each dilution in duplicate. Incubate 2 hours at room temperature.
3. Wash plate 10 times in flowing tap water.
- 25 4. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of 1:2000 dilution of goat anti-human IgG HRP or goat anti-mouse IgG HRP. Incubate 1 hour at room temperature.
5. Wash plate 10 times in flowing tap water.

- 61 -

6. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of ABTS substrate and develop plate for 20-30 minutes. Read the plate at wavelength 405 nm with a background wavelength of 490 nm.
7. Plot graph of absorbance vs antibody concentration.

#### 5 Results and Conclusions:

The binding capacities for the three anti-gp39 antibodies (murine, chimeric and humanized version 1 of 24-31) relative to the concentration of the antibodies, were essentially superimposable (see **Figure 9**). This is a good indication that these antibodies have similar binding capacities for human gp39, indicating that the humanized antibody has retained the gp39 binding affinity of murine 24-31.

#### EXAMPLE 14

#### 15 Competition Between Biotin Labeled Murine 24-31 and Chimeric and Humanized Version 1 24-31

The ability of the chimeric and humanized (version 1) 24-31 antibodies to compete with the murine 24-31 for binding to mgp39-CHO cells basis was evaluated. The ability of the humanized 24-31 to compete with the murine 24-31 for binding to mgp39-CHO was used to evaluate whether in the humanized antibody the exchanges of the murine framework residues with their human counterparts resulted in a significant loss ( $\geq 3x$  decrease) of affinity.

#### 25 Protocol:

##### Plate Preparation

1. Add 50 of poly-1-lysine to each well on the 96 well plate. Incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature. Flick plates to remove poly-1-lysine.

- 62 -

2. Wash mgp39-CHO cells 3 times with HBSS by centrifuging at 1500 rpm for 5 minutes. Resuspend cells in HBSS to  $2 \times 10^6$  cells/ml.
3. Add 50  $\mu$ l of cell suspension to each well and centrifuge plates at 2000 rpm for 5 minutes.
4. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of ice cold 0.5% glutaraldehyde and incubate for 15 minutes at room temperature.
5. Flick plate and blot to remove excess glutaraldehyde. Add 150  $\mu$ l/well of 100 mM glycine with 0.1% BSA and incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature. Plates can be used immediately or frozen at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  for future use.

#### Competition Assay

1. Thaw plate and remove glycine buffer.
2. Dilute mouse anti-gp39 biotin to 200 ng/ml in PBS with 1% BSA.
3. Serially dilute test antibodies (mouse, chimeric, and humanized 24-31) 1:2 starting at 10  $\mu$ g/ml in dilution buffer.
4. Transfer 50  $\mu$ l of diluted test antibodies and mouse anti-gp39 biotin into each well in duplicate. Several wells should contain 50  $\mu$ l dilution buffer with the mouse anti-gp39 biotin as a maximal control group. Incubate 2 hours at room temperature.
5. Wash plates 10 times in flowing tap water.
6. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of 1:2000 dilution of streptavidin HRP and incubate 1 hour at room temperature.
7. Wash plates 10 times in flowing tap water.

- 63 -

8. Add 50  $\mu$ l/well of ABTS substrate and develop plate for 20-30 minutes. Read the plate at wavelength 405 nm with a background wavelength of 490 nm.
9. Percent inhibition is calculated using the average of the control wells.

#### **Results and conclusions:**

All three antibodies competed equally well with the biotin labeled 24-31 (see **Figure 10**). The competition profiles are essentially superimposable at all concentrations, within the limitations of the assay. This demonstrates that the tested humanized antibody (version 1) retains its gp39 binding affinity.

#### **EXAMPLE 15**

##### **Modulation of T Cell Dependent B Cell Differentiation**

To confirm that the humanized 24-31 retains the *in vitro* functional activity of murine 24-31, the humanized 24-31 was compared to the murine 24-31 in a "Lipsky" assay. Donor peripheral blood mononuclear cells were separated into two fractions, a T and a B cell fraction. The T cells were first treated with mitomycin C, to prevent mitosis, and then activated with an anti-CD3 antibody. The B cells were added, together with either the murine or humanized (version 1) 24-31 antibodies. A positive control without antibody, and a negative control without B cells were included in the experiment. After a 10 day incubation, the supernatants were tested for the presence of human IgM.

#### **Protocol:**

- 64 -

1. Coat a 96 well plate with 50  $\mu$ l/well of sterile 4  $\mu$ g/ml anti-CD3 antibody (diluted in 50 mM Tris, pH 9) for 2 hours at 37°C.
2. Selectively purify T and B cells from a buffy coat  
5 using Lympho-Kwik reagents. Activate the T cells with 50  $\mu$ g/ml mitomycin C per  $5 \times 10^6$  cells for 30 minutes at 37°C.
3. Wash plate wells several times with sterile HBSS or media to remove non-adherent antibody.
- 10 4. Add  $1 \times 10^5$  purified T cells ( $2 \times 10^6$ /ml) to each well.
5. Add  $5 \times 10^5$  purified B cells ( $5 \times 10^6$ /ml) to each well. Add 50  $\mu$ l anti-gp39 antibody (10-0.1  $\mu$ g/ml) to each well in quadruplicate. Control wells should include:  
15 a) 0 antibody, b) 0 antibody, no T cells, and c) 0 antibody, no B cells.
6. Incubate plate at 37°C/5% CO<sub>2</sub> for 12 days.
7. Assess cell growth after 7 days using 3H thymidine or any other acceptable method on duplicate wells.
8. After 12 days, collect supernatants from duplicate  
20 wells and perform ELISA assays to determine Ig production (IgM).

#### Results and conclusions:

The results show that the production of human IgM is inhibited 50% by the humanized 24-31 at a concentration  
25 below 0.01  $\mu$ g/ml, similar to the inhibition level obtained with the murine 24-31 (see **Figure 11**). The humanized antibody retained its ability to inhibit T cell dependent B cell differentiation (IgM production) in this experiment.



- 65 -

**EXAMPLE 16****Evaluation of Humanized 24-31, Version 2**

This experiment was conducted to determine whether humanized 24-31 version 2, as compared to version 1, has a similar gp39 binding capacity in a direct binding assay.

**Protocol:**

Same as in Example 13 above.

**Results and conclusions.**

The results show that the binding capacity of the two 24-31 versions are essentially superimposable (see Figure 12). This indicates that the two versions have comparable binding activity to gp39.

**EXAMPLE 17**

This experiment was conducted to measure the K<sub>d</sub> of 24-31, and two humanized versions, 1 and 2.

**Protocol:**

A predetermined amount of each of the three antibodies (murine, version 1 or version 2 24-31) was labeled with <sup>125</sup>I using IODO-BEADS® (Pierce). Antibody bound-<sup>125</sup>I was separated from free <sup>125</sup>I by size separation on a Sephadex-G25/DEAE/Amberlite column.

Direct binding of the <sup>125</sup>I-labeled antibody to murine gp39-CHO cells was tested in a dilution series, in order to determine both counts/μg and the appropriate working concentration (≈half-maximal binding concentration).

<sup>125</sup>I-labeled antibody was mixed and incubated with non-labeled antibody in a dilution series. Based on the total amount of bound antibody and the amount of free antibody, a Scatchard plot was generated from a bound vs. bound-free

- 66 -

graph. The total antibody concentration was based on a standard size of 75 kD for one active site.

The Kd was calculated by generating a "best fit" line. The inverse of the slope of the curve is the Kd. The correlation coefficient,  $r^2$ , was also computed.

#### Results:

The Scatchard plots were analyzed. The Kd's from this analysis are: Version 2, Kd = 14 nM; murine 24-31, Kd = 8.51 nM; version 1, Kd = 5.6. The results are depicted in Figures 13, 14 and 15, respectively. These results provide further evidence that the subject humanized antibodies bind the gp39 antigen similarly to 24-31.

#### Use

The humanized anti-gp39 antibodies of the present invention have potential in treating any disease condition wherein gp39 modulation and/or inhibition of the gp39-CD40 interaction is therapeutically beneficial. Moreover, the subject humanized anti-gp39 antibodies may be used in treatment of diseases wherein suppression of antibody responses to antigens are desirable. Such conditions include both autoimmune and non-autoimmune disorders.

The ability of anti-gp39 antibodies to prevent CD40 signaling in B cells is functionally translated into marked inhibition of T cell-dependent antibody responses *in vivo*. Therefore, autoimmune diseases which are mediated by auto-antibody production would be expected to benefit from anti-gp39 antibody therapy. Such diseases include systemic lupus erythematosus, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, myasthenia gravis and a subpopulation of diabetic patients

- 67 -

with anti-insulin and anti-insulin receptor antibodies. In addition, CD40 signaling in B cells and dendritic cells is essential for upregulation of co-signaling receptors such as B7.1 and B7.2 molecules. Blocking of this CD40 signaling by anti-gp39 antibodies interferes with antigen presentation to T cells, resulting in inhibition of T cell activation and T cell-mediated responses. The therapeutic efficacy of anti-gp39 antibodies in disease models such as CIA, EAE, NOD mice, GVHD and graft rejection further confirms the antibody's inhibitory effect on T cell-mediated responses. Based on this mechanism of action supported by the efficacy in animal models, the therapeutic potential of the subject humanized anti-gp39 antibodies extend to such diseases as RA, MS, diabetes, psoriasis, GVHD and graft rejection.

Specific conditions which are potentially treatable by administration of the subject humanized antibodies include the following:

Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis; Autoimmune hemolytic anemia; Acanthosis nigricans; Allergic contact dermatitis; Addison's disease; Atopic dermatitis; Alopecia areata; Alopecia universalis; Amyloidosis; Anaphylactoid purpura; Anaphylactoid reaction; Aplastic anemia; Angioedema, hereditary; Angioedema, idiopathic; Ankylosing spondylitis; Arteritis, cranial; Arteritis, giant cell; Arteritis, Takayasu's; Arteritis, temporal; Asthma; Ataxia-telangiectasia; Autoimmune oophoritis; Autoimmune orchitis; Autoimmune polyendocrine failure; Behcet's disease; Berger's disease; Buerger's disease; Bullous pemphigus;

- 68 -

Candidiasis, chronic mucocutaneous; Caplan's syndrome;  
Post-myocardial infarction syndrome; Post-pericardiotomy  
syndrome; Carditis; Celiac sprue; Chagas's disease;  
Chediak-Higashi syndrome; Churg-Strauss disease; Cogan's  
5 syndrome; Cold agglutinin disease; CREST syndrome; Crohn's  
disease; Cryoglobulinemia; Cryptogenic fibrosing alveo-  
litis; Dermatitis herpetiformis; Dermatomyositis; Diabetes  
mellitus; Diamond-Blackfan syndrome; DiGeorge syndrome;  
Discoid lupus erythematosus; Eosinophilic fascitis; Epi-  
10 scleritis; Erythema elevatum diutinum; Erythema marginatum;  
Erythema multiforme; Erythema nodosum; Familial Mediterra-  
nean fever; Felty's syndrome; Fibrosis pulmonary; Glomeru-  
lonephritis, anaphylactoid; Glomerulonephritis, autoimmune;  
Glomerulonephritis, post-streptococcal; Glomerulonephritis,  
15 post-transplantation; Glomerulopathy, membranous; Goodpas-  
ture's syndrome; Graft-vs.-host disease; Granulocytopenia,  
immune-mediated; Granuloma annulare; Granulomatosis, aller-  
gic; Granulomatous myositis; Grave's disease; Hashimoto's  
thyroiditis; Hemolytic disease of the newborn; Hemochroma-  
20 tosis, idiopathic; Henoch-Schoenlein purpura; Hepatitis,  
chronic active and chronic progressive; Histiocytosis X;  
Hypereosinophilic syndrome; Idiopathic thrombocytopenic  
purpura; Job's syndrome; Juvenile dermatomyositis; Juvenile  
rheumatoid arthritis (Juvenile chronic arthritis);  
25 Kawasaki's disease; Keratitis; Keratoconjunctivitis sicca;  
Landry-Guillain-Barre-Strohl syndrome; Leprosy, leproma-  
tous; Loeffler's syndrome; Lyell's syndrome; Lyme disease;  
Lymphomatoid granulomatosis; Mastocytosis, systemic; Mixed  
connective tissue disease; Mononeuritis multiplex; Muckle-

- 69 -

Wells syndrome; Mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome; Mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome; Multicentric reticulohistiocytosis; Multiple sclerosis; Myasthenia gravis; Mycosis fungoides; Necrotizing vasculitis, systemic; Nephrotic syndrome; Overlap syndrome; Panniculitis; Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria; Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria; Pemphigoid; Pemphigus; Pemphigus erythematosus; Pemphigus foliaceus; Pemphigus vulgaris; Pigeon breeder's disease; Pneumonitis, hypersensitivity; Polyarteritis nodosa; Polymyalgia rheumatica; Polymyositis; Polyneuritis, idiopathic; Portuguese familial polyneuropathies; Pre-eclampsia/-eclampsia; Primary biliary cirrhosis; Progressive systemic sclerosis (Scleroderma); Psoriasis; Psoriatic arthritis; Pulmonary alveolar proteinosis; Pulmonary fibrosis, Raynaud's phenomenon/syndrome; Reidel's thyroiditis; Reiter's syndrome, Relapsing polychondritis; Rheumatic fever; Rheumatoid arthritis; Sarcoidosis; Scleritis; Sclerosing cholangitis; Serum sickness; Sezary syndrome; Sjogren's syndrome; Stevens-Johnson syndrome; Still's disease; Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis; Sympathetic ophthalmia; Systemic lupus erythematosus; Transplant rejection; Ulcerative colitis; Undifferentiated connective tissue disease; Urticaria, chronic; Urticaria, cold; Uveitis; Vitiligo; Weber-Christian disease; Wegener's granulomatosis; Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome.

Of these, the preferred indications treatable or presentable by administration of anti-gp39 antibodies include autoimmune hemolytic anemia; aplastic anemia; arteritis, temporal; diabetes mellitus; Felty's syndrome;

- 70 -

Goodpasture's syndrome; graft-vs-host disease; idiopathic thrombocytopenia pupura; myasthenia gravis; multiple sclerosis; polyarteritis nodosa; psoriasis; psoriatic arthritis; rheumatoid arthritis; systemic lupus erythematosus; 5 asthma; allergic conditions; and transplant rejection.

The amount of antibody useful to produce a therapeutic effect can be determined by standard techniques well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. The antibodies will generally be provided by standard technique within a pharmaceutically acceptable buffer, and may be administered by 10 any desired route. Because of the efficacy of the presently claimed antibodies and their tolerance by humans it is possible to administer these antibodies repetitively in order to combat various diseases or disease states within a 15 human.

The subject anti-gp39 humanized antibodies (or fragments thereof) of this invention are also useful for inducing immunomodulation, e.g., inducing suppression of a human's or animal's immune system. This invention therefore relates to a method of prophylactically or therapeutically inducing immunomodulation in a human or other animal in need thereof by administering an effective, non-toxic amount of such an antibody of this invention to such human or other animal. 20

25 The fact that the antibodies of this invention have utility in inducing immunosuppression means that they are useful in the treatment or prevention of resistance to or rejection of transplanted organs or tissues (e.g., kidney, heart, lung, bone marrow, skin, cornea, etc.); the treat-

- 71 -

ment or prevention of autoimmune, inflammatory, proliferative and hyperproliferative diseases, and of cutaneous manifestations of immunologically mediated diseases (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, lupus erythematosus, systemic lupus erythematosus, Hashimoto's thyroiditis, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, type 1 diabetes, uveitis, nephrotic syndrome, psoriasis, atypical dermatitis, contact dermatitis and further eczematous dermatitides, seborrheic dermatitis, Lichen planus, Pemphigus, bullous pemphigoid, Epidermolysis bullosa, urticaria, angioedemas, vasculitides, erythema, cutaneous eosinophilias, Alopecia areata, etc.); the treatment of reversible obstructive airways disease, intestinal inflammations and allergies (e.g., Coeliac disease, proctitis, eosinophilia gastroenteritis, mastocytosis, Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis) and food-related allergies (e.g., migraine, rhinitis and eczema). Also, the subject antibodies have potential utility for treatment of non-autoimmune conditions wherein immunomodulation is desirable, e.g., graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), transplant rejection, asthma, leukemia, lymphoma, among others.

Also, the subject antibodies can be used as immunosuppressants during cellular or gene therapy. This potentially will enable such cells or gene therapy constructs to be administered repeatedly, or at higher dosages without an adverse immunogenic response.

One skilled in the art would be able, by routine experimentation, to determine what an effective, non-toxic amount of antibody would be for the purpose of inducing

- 72 -

immunosuppression. Generally, however, an effective dosage will be in the range of about 0.05 to 100 milligrams per kilogram body weight per day.

5 The antibodies of the invention may be administered to a human or other animal in accordance with the aforementioned methods of treatment in an amount sufficient to produce such effect to a therapeutic or prophylactic degree. Such antibodies of the invention can be administered to such human or other animal in a conventional dosage form  
10 prepared by combining the antibody of the invention with a conventional pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent according to known techniques. It will be recognized by one of skill in the art that the form and character of the pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent is dictated  
15 by the amount of active ingredient with which it is to be combined, the route of administration and other well-known variables.

The route of administration of the antibody (or fragment thereof) of the invention may be oral, parenteral, by  
20 inhalation or topical. The term parenteral as used herein includes intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous, rectal, vaginal or intraperitoneal administration. The subcutaneous and intramuscular forms of parenteral administration are generally preferred.

25 The daily parenteral and oral dosage regimens for employing compounds of the invention to prophylactically or therapeutically induce immunosuppression will generally be in the range of about 0.05 to 100, but preferably about 0.5 to 10, milligrams per kilogram body weight per day.



- 73 -

The antibody of the invention may also be administered by inhalation. By "inhalation" is meant intranasal and oral inhalation administration. Appropriate dosage forms for such administration, such as an aerosol formulation or  
5 a metered dose inhaler, may be prepared by conventional techniques. The preferred dosage amount of a compound of the invention to be employed is generally within the range of about 10 to 100 milligrams.

The antibody of the invention may also be administered  
10 topically. By topical administration is meant non-systemic administration and includes the application of an antibody (or fragment thereof) compound of the invention externally to the epidermis, to the buccal cavity and instillation of such an antibody into the ear, eye and nose, and where it  
15 does not significantly enter the blood stream. By systemic administration is meant oral, intravenous, intraperitoneal and intramuscular administration. The amount of an antibody required for therapeutic or prophylactic effect will, of course, vary with the antibody chosen, the nature and  
20 severity of the condition being treated and the animal undergoing treatment, and is ultimately at the discretion of the physician. A suitable topical dose of an antibody of the invention will generally be within the range of about 1 to 100 milligrams per kilogram body weight daily.

## 25 Formulations

While it is possible for an antibody or fragment thereof to be administered alone, it is preferable to present it as a pharmaceutical formulation. The active ingredient may comprise, for topical administration, from

- 74 -

0.001% to 10% w/w, e.g., from 1% to 2% by weight of the formulation, although it may comprise as much as 10% w/w but preferably not in excess of 5% w/w and more preferably from 0.1% to 1% w/w of the formulation.

5           The topical formulations of the present invention, comprise an active ingredient together with one or more acceptable carrier(s) therefor and optionally any other therapeutic ingredients(s). The carrier(s) must be "ac-  
10           ceptable" in the sense of being compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation and not deleterious to the recipient thereof.

          Formulations suitable for topical administration include liquid or semi-liquid preparations suitable for penetration through the skin to the site of where treatment  
15           is required, such as liniments, lotions, creams, ointments or pastes, and drops suitable for administration to the eye, ear or nose.

          Drops according to the present invention may comprise sterile aqueous or oily solutions or suspensions and may be  
20           prepared by dissolving the active ingredient in a suitable aqueous solution of a bactericidal and/or fungicidal agent and/or any other suitable preservative, and preferably including a surface active agent. The resulting solution may then be clarified by filtration, transferred to a  
25           suitable container which is then sealed and sterilized by autoclaving or maintaining at 90°-100°C for half an hour. Alternatively, the solution may be sterilized by filtration and transferred to the container by an aseptic technique. Examples of bactericidal and fungicidal agents suitable for

- 75 -

inclusion in the drops are phenylmercuric nitrate or acetate (0.002%), benzalkonium chloride (0.01%) and chlorhexidine acetate (0.01%). Suitable solvents for the preparation of an oily solution include glycerol, diluted alcohol and propylene glycol.

Lotions according to the present invention include those suitable for application to the skin or eye. An eye lotion may comprise a sterile aqueous solution optionally containing a bactericide and may be prepared by methods similar to those for the preparation of drops. Lotions or liniments for application to the skin may also include an agent to hasten drying and to cool the skin, such as an alcohol or acetone, and/or a moisturizer such as glycerol or an oil such as castor oil or arachis oil.

Creams, ointments or pastes according to the present invention are semi-solid formulations of the active ingredient for external application. They may be made by mixing the active ingredient in finely-divided or powdered form, alone or in solution or suspension in an aqueous or non-aqueous fluid, with the aid of suitable machinery, with a greasy or non-greasy basis. The basis may comprise hydrocarbons such as hard, soft or liquid paraffin, glycerol, beeswax, a metallic soap; a mucilage; an oil of natural origin such as almond, corn, arachis, castor or olive oil; wool fat or its derivatives, or a fatty acid such as stearic or oleic acid together with an alcohol such as propylene glycol or macrogels. The formulation may incorporate any suitable surface active agent such as an anionic, cationic or non-ionic surface active such as sorbitan

- 76 -

esters or polyoxyethylene derivatives thereof. Suspending agents such as natural gums, cellulose derivatives or inorganic materials such as siliceous silicas, and other ingredients such as lanolin, may also be included.

5           It will be recognized by one of skill in the art that the optimal quantity and spacing of individual dosages of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention will be determined by the nature and extent of the condition being treated, the form, route and site of administration, and  
10       the particular animal being treated, and that such optimums can be determined by conventional techniques. It will also be appreciated by one of skill in the art that the optimal course of treatment, i.e., the number of doses of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention given per day for  
15       a defined number of days, can be ascertained by those skilled in the art using conventional course of treatment determination tests.

          Without further elaboration, it is believed that one skilled in the art can, using the preceding description,  
20       utilize the present invention to its fullest extent. The following are, therefore, to be construed as merely illustrative examples and not a limitation of the scope of the present invention in any way.

#### Capsule Composition

25           A pharmaceutical composition of this invention in the form of a capsule is prepared by filling a standard two-piece hard gelatin capsule with 50 mg. of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention, in powdered form, 100

- 77 -

mg. of lactose, 32 mg. of talc and 8 mg. of magnesium stearate.

#### Injectable Parenteral Composition

A pharmaceutical composition of this invention in a form suitable for administration by injection is prepared  
5 by stirring 1.5k by weight of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention in 10k by volume propylene glycol and water. The solution is sterilized by filtration.

#### Ointment Composition

Antibody or fragment thereof of the invention 1.0 g.  
10 White soft paraffin to 100.0 g.

The antibody or fragment thereof of the invention is dispersed in a small volume of the vehicle to produce a smooth, homogeneous product. Collapsible metal tubes are then filled with the dispersion.

#### 15 Topical Cream Composition

Antibody or fragment thereof of the invention 1.0 g.  
Polawax GP 200 20.0 g.  
Lanolin Anhydrous 2.0 g.  
White Beeswax 2.5 g.  
20 Methyl hydroxybenzoate 0.1 g.  
Distilled Water to 100.0 g.

The polawax, beeswax and lanolin are heated together at 60°C. A solution of methyl hydroxybenzoate is added and homogenization is achieved using high speed stirring. The  
25 temperature is then allowed to fall to 50°C. The antibody or fragment thereof of the invention is then added and dispersed throughout, and the composition is allowed to cool with slow speed stirring.

- 78 -

Topical Lotion Composition

Antibody or fragment thereof of the invention 1.0 g.

Sorbitan Monolaurate 0.6 g. Polysorbate 20 0.6 g.

Cetostearyl Alcohol 1.2 g. Glycerin 6.0 g.

5 Methyl Hydroxybenzoate 0.2 g.

Purified Water B.P. to 100.00 ml. (B.P. = British Pharmacopeia)

The methyl hydroxybenzoate and glycerin are dissolved in 70 ml. of the water at 75°C. The sorbitan monolaurate, polysorbate 20 and cetostearyl alcohol are melted together at 75°C and added to the aqueous solution. The resulting emulsion is homogenized, allowed to cool with continuous stirring and the antibody or fragment thereof of the invention is added as a suspension in the remaining water. The whole suspension is stirred until homogenized.

Eye Drop Composition

Antibody or fragment thereof of the invention 0.5 g.

Methyl Hydroxybenzoate 0.01 g.

Propyl Hydroxybenzoate 0.04 g.

20 Purified Water B.P. to 100.00 ml.

The methyl and propyl hydroxybenzoates are dissolved in 70 ml. purified water at 75°C and the resulting solution is allowed to cool. The antibody or fragment thereof of the invention is then added, and the solution is sterilized by filtration through a membrane filter (0.022 Am pore size), and packed aseptically into suitable sterile containers.

- 79 -

Composition for Administration by Inhalation

For an aerosol container with a capacity of 15-20 ml: mix 10 mg. of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention with 0.2-0.5k of a lubricating agent, such as polysorbate 85 or oleic acid, and disperse such mixture in a propellant, such as freon, preferably in a combination of (1,2 dichlorotetrafluoroethane) and difluorochloromethane and put into an appropriate aerosol container adapted for either intranasal or oral inhalation administration.

Composition for Administration by Inhalation For an aerosol container with a capacity of 15-20 ml: dissolve 10 mg. of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention in ethanol (6-8 ml.), add 0.1-0.2k of a lubricating agent, such as polysorbate 85 or oleic acid; and disperse such in a propellant, such as freon, preferably in combination of (1-2 dichlorotetrafluoroethane) and difluorochloromethane, and put into an appropriate aerosol container adapted for either intranasal or oral inhalation administration.

The antibodies and pharmaceutical compositions of the invention are particularly useful for parenteral administration, i.e., subcutaneously, intramuscularly or intravenously. The compositions for parenteral administration will commonly comprise a solution of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention or a cocktail thereof dissolved in an acceptable carrier, preferably an aqueous carrier. A variety of aqueous carriers may be employed, e.g., water, buffered water, 0.4k saline, 0.3% glycine, and the like. These solutions are sterile and generally free of particulate matter. These solutions may be sterilized

- 80 -

by conventional, well-known sterilization techniques. The compositions may contain pharmaceutically acceptable auxiliary substances as required to approximate physiological conditions such as pH adjusting and buffering agents, etc.

5 The concentration of the antibody or fragment thereof of the invention in such pharmaceutical formulation can vary widely, i.e., from less than about 0.5k, usually at or at least about 1% to as much as 15 or 20% by weight, and will be selected primarily based on fluid volumes, viscosities,  
10 etc., according to the particular mode of administration selected.

Thus, a pharmaceutical composition of the invention for intramuscular injection could be prepared to contain 1 mL sterile buffered water, and 50 mg. of an antibody or  
15 fragment thereof of the invention. Similarly, a pharmaceutical composition of the invention for intravenous infusion could be made up to contain 250 ml. of sterile Ringer's solution, and 150 mg. of an antibody or fragment thereof of the invention. Actual methods for preparing parenterally  
20 administrable compositions are well-known or will be apparent to those skilled in the art, and are described in more detail in, e.g., *Remington's Pharmaceutical Science*, 15th ed., Mack Publishing Company, Easton, PA, hereby incorporated by reference herein.

25 The antibodies (or fragments thereof) of the invention can be lyophilized for storage and reconstituted in a suitable carrier prior to use. This technique has been shown to be effective with conventional immune globulins



- 81 -

and art-known lyophilization and reconstitution techniques can be employed.

Depending on the intended result, the pharmaceutical composition of the invention can be administered for prophylactic and/or therapeutic treatments. In therapeutic application, compositions are administered to a patient already suffering from a disease, in an amount sufficient to cure or at least partially arrest the disease and its complications. In prophylactic applications, compositions containing the present antibodies or a cocktail thereof are administered to a patient not already in a disease state to enhance the patient's resistance.

Single or multiple administrations of the pharmaceutical compositions can be carried out with dose levels and pattern being selected by the treating physician. In any event, the pharmaceutical composition of the invention should provide a quantity of the altered antibodies (or fragments thereof) of the invention sufficient to effectively treat the patient.

It should also be noted that the antibodies of this invention may be used for the design and synthesis of either peptide or non-peptide compounds (mimetics) which would be useful in the same therapy as the antibody. See, e.g., Saragovi et al, *Science*, 253:792-795 (1991).

From the foregoing, it will be appreciated that, although specific embodiments of the invention have been described herein for purposes of illustration, various modifications may be made without diverting from the scope

- 82 -

of the invention. Accordingly, the invention is not limited by the appended claims.

- 83 -

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A humanized antibody which is capable of competing with the murine 24-31 antibody for inhibiting CD40 binding to gp39.

5        2. The antibody of claim 1 which contains the complementarity determining regions of the 24-31 antibody as set forth in Figures 4-8 or variants and equivalents which contain one or more conservative amino acid substitutions.

10       3. A humanized antibody derived from murine monoclonal antibody 24-31.

4. A humanized antibody derived from murine monoclonal antibody 24-31 which retains at least about one-third the gp39 antigen binding affinity of the murine 24-31 antibody.

15       5. A humanized antibody derived from murine monoclonal antibody 24-31 which retains the half-maximal potency in *in vitro* functional activity in a B cell assay at a concentration of not more than three times the concentration of the parent murine 24-31 antibody.

20       6. The method of Claim 5, wherein the B-cell assay measures T-cell dependent antibody production.

- 84 -

7. The humanized antibody of Claim 1, wherein said antibody contains a humanized variable light sequence selected from the following group:

- 5 (1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITTC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVITTC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- 10 (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK,

and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantially affect the ability of the resultant humanized  
15 antibody to bind the gp39 antigen.

8. The humanized antibody of Claim 1, wherein said antibody contains a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the group consisting of:

- 20 (1) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;
- (2) EVQLQESGPGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

- 85 -

(3) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTLCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNNQFSLNLSVTRADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

5 (4) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCVYSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYLLKSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS.

and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantially affect the ability of the resultant humanized antibody to bind the gp39 antigen.

10 9. The humanized antibody of Claim 1, which contains a humanized variable light sequence selected from the group consisting of the following group:

(1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVTITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

15 (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

(3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVTITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

20 (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK

and a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the following group:

(1) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

- 86 -

(2) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

(3) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNNQFSLNLSVTRADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

5

(4) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCAVYGSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYLKLSSVTAADTGVIYAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS, and

and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more  
conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantial-  
10 ly affect the ability of the resultant humanized antibody to  
bind the gp39 antigen.

10. The humanized antibody of Claim 5, which contains  
humanized variable light sequence (1) and humanized variable  
heavy sequence (1).

15 11. The humanized antibody of Claim 5, which contains  
humanized variable light sequence (2) and humanized variable  
heavy sequence (1).

12. The humanized antibody of Claim 5, which contains  
humanized variable light sequence (1) and humanized variable  
20 heavy sequence (2).

13. The humanized antibody of Claim 5, which contains  
humanized variable light sequence (2) and humanized variable  
heavy sequence (2).

- 87 -

14. The humanized antibody of Claim 1, which contains the human kappa or lambda light chain constant region and either the human gamma 1 or gamma 4 heavy chain constant region.

15. A DNA sequence which encodes for a humanized antibody according to Claim 1.

16. An expression vector which contains a DNA sequence according to Claim 10.

17. A pharmaceutical composition which contains a humanized antibody derived from murine monoclonal antibody 24-31.

18. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 17, wherein said humanized antibody contains a humanized variable light sequence selected from the following group:

(1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

(2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

(3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVITC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;

(4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK.

- 88 -

and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantially affect the ability of the resultant humanized antibody to bind the gp39 antigen.

5           19. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 18, wherein said humanized antibody contains a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the following group:

(1) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

10          (2) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHGPNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

(3) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHGPNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNNQFSLNLNSVTRADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS;

15          (4) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCAVYGSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYLLKLSSVTAADTGVYYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WGQGTTLTVSS,

and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantially affect the ability of the resultant humanized antibody to  
20 bind the gp39 antigen.

20          The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 17, wherein said humanized antibody contains a humanized variable light sequence selected from the following group:



- 89 -

- (1) DIVMTQSPSFLSASVGDRVITIC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (2) DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- 5 (3) DIVMTQSPSFMSTSVGDRVITIC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGKSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQPEDFADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK;
- (4) DIVMTQSPDSMATSLGERVTINC KASQNVITAVA WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY SASNRYT  
GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISMQAEDVADYFC QQYNSYPYT FGGGTKLEIK

and a humanized variable heavy sequence selected from the  
10 following group:

- (1) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WQGTTTLTVSS;
- (2) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCTVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTGVIYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WQGTTTLTVSS;
- 15 (3) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSQTLSTCAVSGDSIT NGFWI WIRKHPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSNNQFSLNLSVTRADTGVIYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WQGTTTLTVSS;
- (4) EVQLQESGPGGLVKPSETLSLTCAVYGDST NGFWI WIRKPPGNKLEYMG YISYSGSTYYNPSLKS  
RISISRDTSKNQFYKLSSVTAADTGVIYCAC RSYGRTPYYFDF WQGTTTLTVSS,

20 and variants and equivalents thereof which contain one or more  
conservative amino acid substitutions which do not substantial-  
ly affect the ability of the resultant humanized antibody to  
bind the gp39 antigen.

- 90 -

21. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 20, wherein the humanized antibody contains humanized variable light sequence (1) and variable heavy sequence (1).

22. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 20, wherein  
5 the antibody contains humanized variable light sequence (2) and humanized variable heavy sequence (1).

23. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 20, which contains humanized variable light sequence (1) and humanized variable heavy sequence (2).

10 24. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 20, which contains humanized variable light sequence (2) and humanized variable heavy sequence (2).

25. A method of treatment of a disease treatable by modulating gp39 expression or inhibiting the gp39/CD40 interaction which comprises administering a therapeutically effective  
15 amount of a humanized antibody according to Claim 1.

26. The method of Claim 25, wherein said disease is an autoimmune disorder.

27. The method of Claim 21, wherein said autoimmune  
20 disorder is selected from the group consisting of rheumatoid arthritis, psoriasis multiple sclerosis, diabetes, systemic lupus erythematosus and ITP.

- 91 -

28. The method of Claim 25, wherein the disease is a non-autoimmune disorder.

29. The method of Claim 27, wherein the disease is graft-versus-host disease or graft rejection.

5       30. A method of suppressing humoral and/or cellular immune responses against cells or vectors administered during cell or gene therapy comprising further administering prior, during or after gene therapy an amount of a humanized antibody derived from murine antibody 24-31 sufficient to suppress  
10 humoral and/or cellular immune responses against the cell or vector used during cell or gene therapy.

31. The method of Claim 30, wherein the vector is a viral vector, a DNA or an antisense RNA.

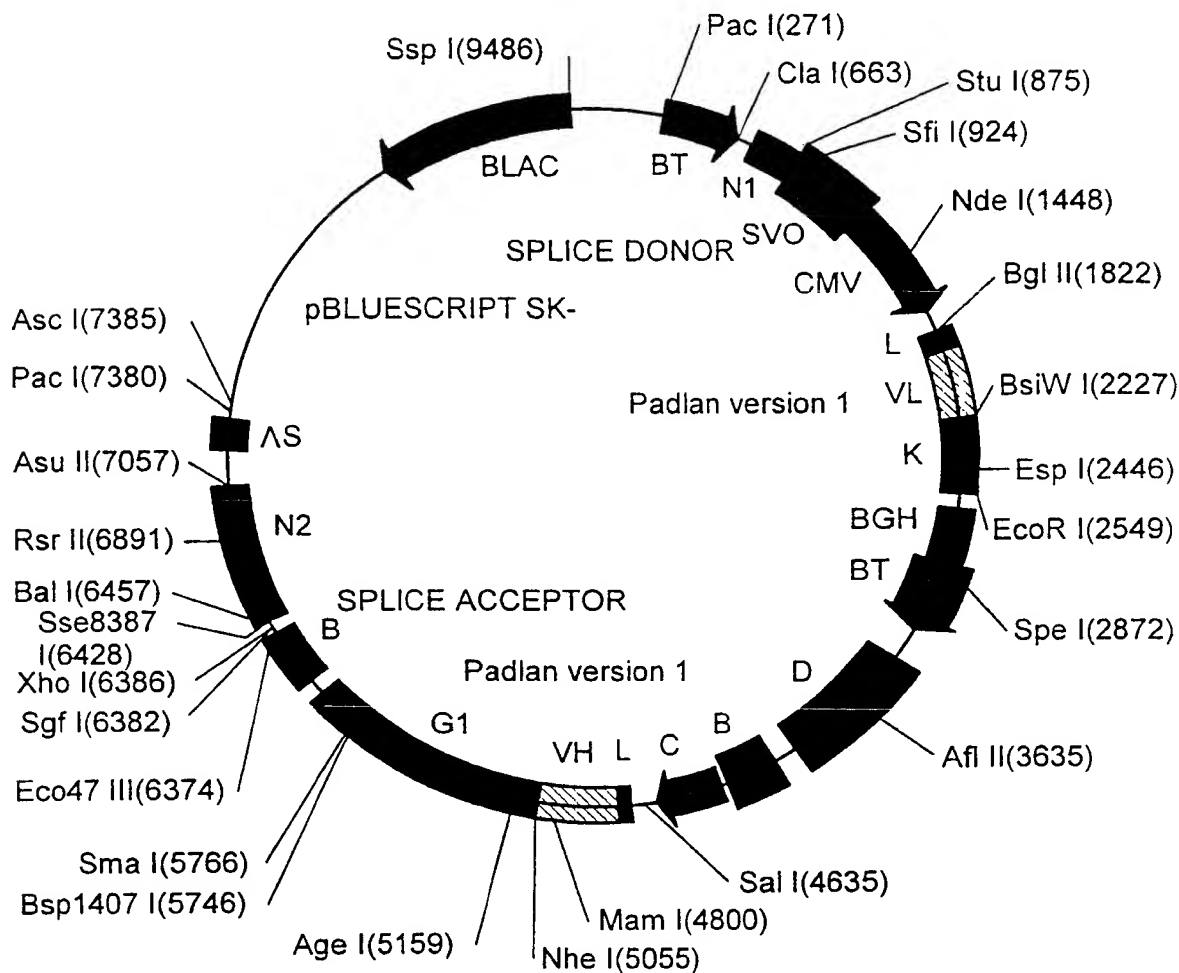
32. The method of Claim 31, wherein the viral vector is  
15 an adenovirus or retrovirus.

33. The method of Claim 30, wherein said humanized antibody contains a sequence set forth in at least one Figures 5-8.

34. An improved method of treatment which involves the  
20 transplantation of cells, tissues or organs of the same or different species into a subject in need of such treatment, wherein the improvement comprises administering a humanized anti-human gp39 antibody derived from murine antibody 24-31;

- 92 -

prior, during or after transplantation; in an amount sufficient to suppress immune responses against said transplanted cell, tissue or organ or to suppress immune responses elicited by the transplanted cell, tissue or organ against the host.

**FIG. 1****Anti-GP39 HU24-31 in N5KG1 (Version #1)**

9597 BP

Map BY Mitchell Raff

06/01/95

C = Cytomegalovirus promoter/enhancer

BT = Mouse Beta globin major promoter

B = Bovine growth hormone polyadenylation

N1 = Neomycin phosphotransferase exon 1

N2 = Neomycin phosphotransferase exon 2

K = Human immunoglobulin kappa constant region

G1 = Human immunoglobulin gamma 1 constant region

VL = Anti-GP39 variable light region (version #1)

VH = Anti-GP39 variable heavy region (version #1)

NONCUTTERS = AvrII, BstI 107I, DraIII, FseI, HindIII, I-PpoI, I-SceI,

KpnI, MluI, MunI, PmeI, PmlI, SgrAI, SrfI, Swa I, XbaI, XcmI

N5KG1 cut BglII + BsiWI and VL dropped in &amp; cut SalI + NheI and VH dropped in.

L = Leader

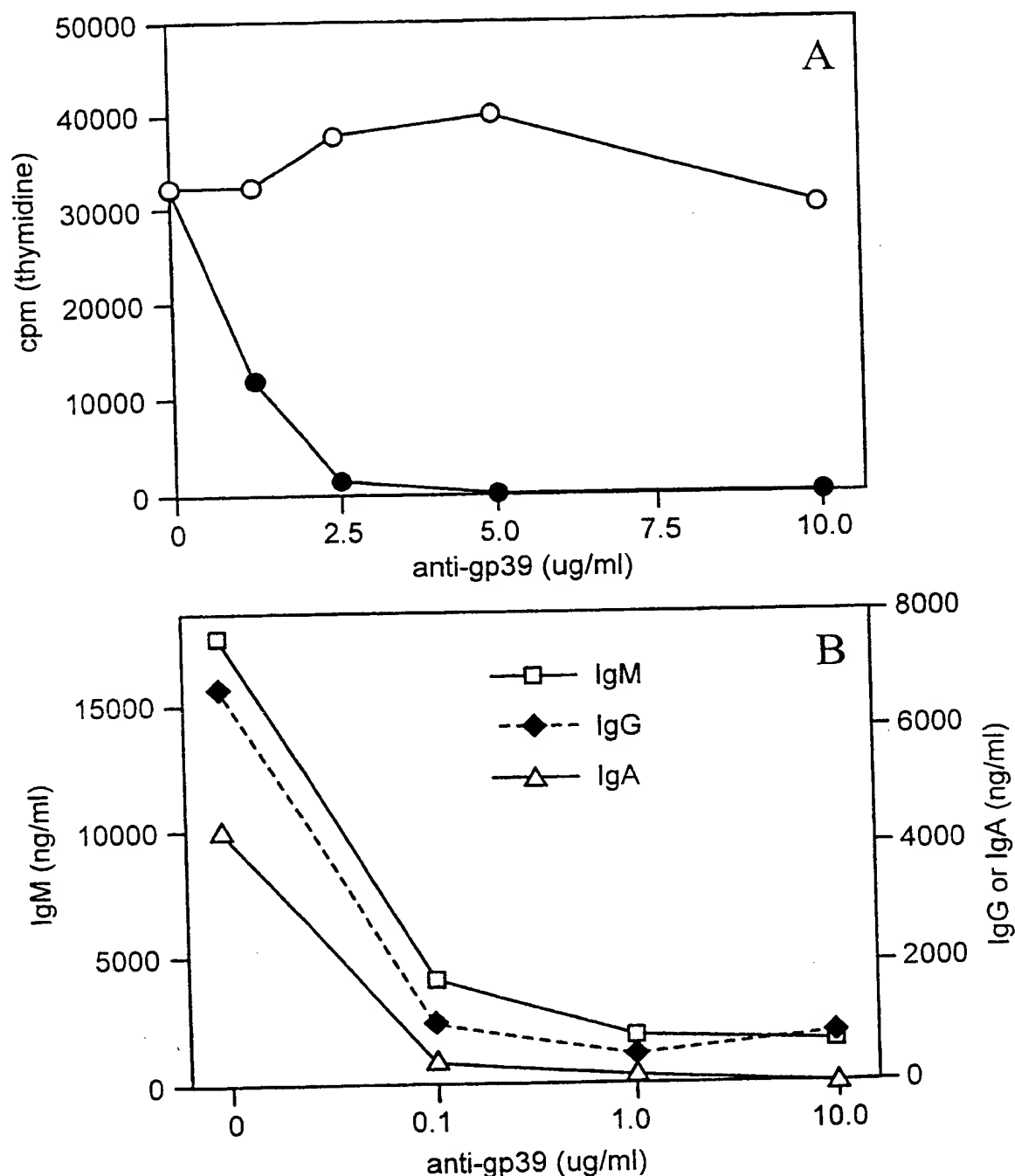
SVO = SV40 origin

SV = SV40 polyadenylation

D = Dihydrofolate Reductase

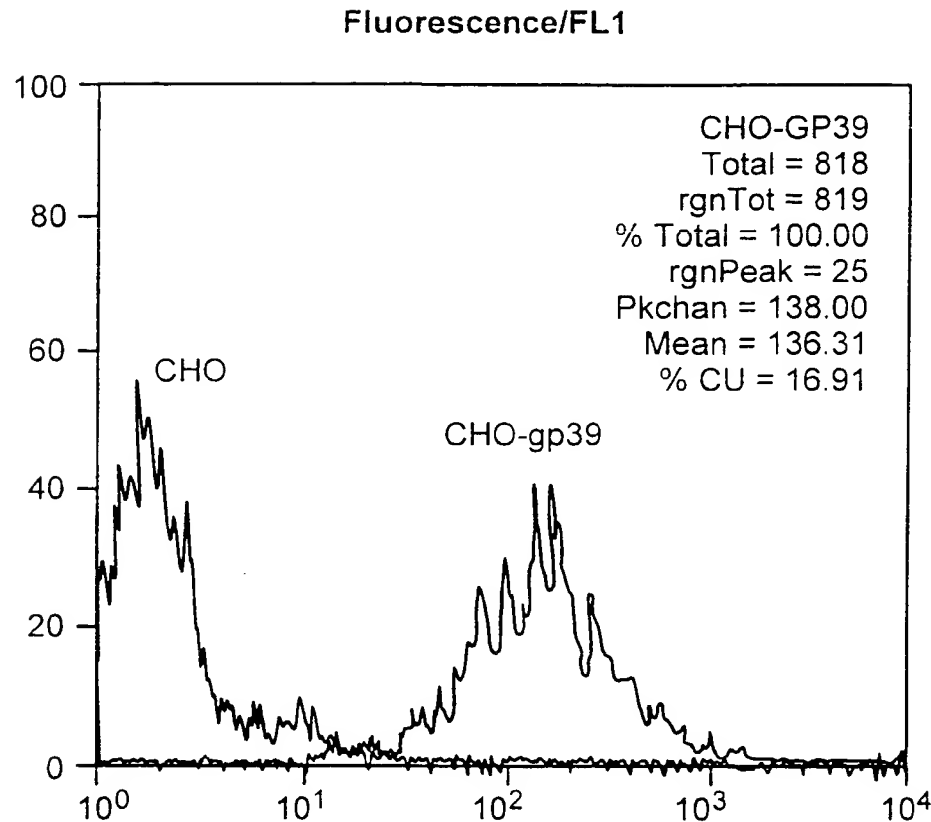
BLAC = Betalactamase gene

2 / 26

**FIG. 2**

Anti-gp39 inhibits B cell proliferation and differentiation, but not allogeneic T cell proliferation. A. Human PBL were cultured in 96 well plates ( $0.1 \times 10^6$ /well) in the presence or absence of the 20% (v/v) soluble gp39-CD8 (sgp39-CD8) fusion protein and 5 ug/ml rhIL-4 for 3 d. Anti-gp39 mAb, 24-31 (●), or a control murine IgG1 mAb (○), were added at a range of concentrations (1.25-10 ug/ml). Cultures with pulsed with 1 uCi  $^3$ H-thymidine during the final 6 hr of a 72 hr culture period. B. Mitomycin treated T cells ( $5 \times 10^4$ /well) activated with immobilized anti-CD3 (64.1) were cultured with  $2.5 \times 10^4$ /well IgD<sup>+</sup> B cells in 96-well microtiter plates for 12d in the presence or absence of various concentrations (0.1-10.0 ug/ml) of anti-gp39 mAb, 24-31. Culture supernatants were subsequently assayed for IgM (□), IgG (◆), and IgA (△) by isotype specific ELISA.

3 / 26

**FIG. 3**

FACS analysis of non-transfected CHO cells and a gp39 transfectant.  $1 \times 10^6$  cells were treated with the mouse anti-gp39 antibody 24-31 and then with a goat-anti-mouse IgG-FITC conjugate (Southern Biotechnology Associates). The samples were analyzed on FACScan (Becton Dickinson).

4/26

24-31 Humanized V<sub>L</sub> #1

5' <u>BglIII</u>																			
AGA	TCT	CTC	ACC	ATG	GGC	TTC	AAG	ATG	GAG	TCA	CAG	TTT	CTG	GCC	TTT	GTA	TTC		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
				M	G	F	K	M	E	S	Q	F	L	A	F	V	F		
CGG	TTT	CTC	TGG	TTG	TCT	GGT	GTT	GAT	GGA	FR1	90	GAC	ATT	GTG	ATG	ACC	CAG	TCT	CCA
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
A	F	L	W	L	S	G	V	D	G	D	I	V	M	T	Q	S	P		
TCT	TTC	CTC	TCC	GCC	TCC	GTA	GGA	GAC	AGG	GTC	144	ACC	ATC	ACC	TGC	153	CDR1	162	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
S	F	L	S	A	S	V	G	D	R	V	T	I	T	C	K	A	S		
CAG	AAT	GTG	ATT	ACT	GCT	GTA	GCC	189	FR2	198	TGG	TAT	CAA	CAG	AAA	CCA	207	AAG	TCT
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
Q	N	V	I	T	A	V	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	P	G	K	S	P		
AAA	TTG	CTG	ATT	TAC	225	234	CDR2	243	CGG	TAC	252	FR3	261	GGA	GTC	CCT	GAT	CGC	270
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
K	L	L	I	Y	S	A	S	N	R	Y	T	G	V	P	D	R	F		
TCA	GGC	AGT	GGG	TCT	279	288	ACA	GAT	297	ACT	CTC	306	ATC	AGC	TCT	CTC	CAG	324	CCA
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	S	S	L	Q	P		
GAA	GAC	TTC	GCA	GAT	333	342	TAT	TTC	TGC	351	CDR3	360	CAG	CAA	TAT	AAC	AGC	TAT	369
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
E	D	F	A	D	Y	F	C	Q	Q	Y	N	S	Y	P	Y	T	F		
FR4	387	396	405	<u>BsiWI</u>															
GGA	GGG	GGG	ACC	AAG	CTG	GAA	ATC	AAA	CGT	ACG	3'								
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---								
G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	R	T									

FIGURE 4



5/26

24-31 Humanized V<sub>L</sub> #2

5'	<u>BglIII</u>			9	18			27			36			45			54							
	AGA	TCT	CTC	ACC	ATG	GGC	TTC	AAG	ATG	GAG	TCA	CAG	TTT	CTG	GCC	TTT	GTA	TTC						
	---	---	---	---	M	G	F	K	M	E	S	Q	F	L	A	F	V	F						
	63			72			81			90			FR1			99			108					
	GCG	TTT	CTC	TGG	TTG	TCT	GGT	GTT	GAT	GGA	GAC	ATT	GTG	ATG	ACC	CAG	TCT	CCA						
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---						
	A	F	L	W	L	S	G	V	D	G	D	I	V	M	T	Q	S	P						
	117			126			135			144			153			CDR1			162					
	GAT	TCT	CTC	GCC	GTG	TCC	CTC	GGA	GAG	AGG	GCC	ACC	ATC	AAC	TGC	AAG	GCC	AGT						
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---						
	D	S	L	A	V	S	L	G	E	R	A	T	I	N	C	K	A	S						
	171			180			189			FR2			198			207			216					
	CAG	AAT	GTG	ATT	ACT	GCT	GTA	GCC	TGG	TAT	CAA	CAG	AAA	CCA	GGA	CAA	TCT	CCT						
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---						
	Q	N	V	I	T	A	V	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	P	G	Q	S	P						
	225			234			CDR2			243			252			FR3			261			270		
	AAA	TTG	CTG	ATT	TAC	TCG	GCA	TCC	AAT	CGG	TAC	ACT	GGA	GTC	CCT	GAT	CGC	TTC						
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---						
	K	L	L	I	Y	S	A	S	N	R	Y	T	G	V	P	D	R	F						
	279			288			297			306			315			324								
	TCA	GGC	AGT	GGG	TCT	GGG	ACA	GAT	TTC	ACT	CTC	ACC	ATC	AGC	TCT	CTC	CAG	GCC						
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---						
	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	S	S	L	Q	A						
	333			342			351			CDR3			360			369			378					
	GAA	GAC	GTG	GCA	GAT	TAT	TTC	TGC	CAG	CAA	TAT	AAC	AGC	TAT	CCG	TAC	ACG	TTC						
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---						
	E	D	V	A	D	Y	F	C	Q	Q	Y	N	S	Y	P	Y	T	F						
	FR4			387			396			405			<u>BsiWI</u>											
	GGA	GGG	GGG	ACC	AAG	CTG	GAA	ATC	AAA	CGT	ACG	3'												
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---												
	G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	R	T													

FIGURE 5

6/26

24-31 Humanized V<sub>H</sub> #1

5'	<u>SalI</u>		9		18		27		36		45		54					
	GTC	GAC	ATG	ATG	GTG	TTA	AGT	CTT	CTG	TAC	CTG	TTG	ACA	GCC	CTT	CCG	GGT	TTC
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
			M	M	V	L	S	L	L	Y	L	L	T	A	L	P	G	F
	CTG	TCA	63 FR1		72		81		90		99		108					
	---	---	GAG	GTG	CAG	CTT	CAG	GAG	TCA	GGA	CCT	GGC	CTC	GTG	AAA	CCT	TCT	GAG
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	L	S	E	V	Q	L	Q	E	S	G	P	G	L	V	K	P	S	E
	117		126		135		144		153 CDR1		162							
	ACT	CTG	TCC	CTC	ACC	TGT	ACC	GTC	TCT	GGC	GAC	TCC	ATC	ACT	AAT	GGT	TTC	TGG
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	T	L	S	L	T	C	T	V	S	G	D	S	I	T	N	G	F	W
	171 FR2		180		189		198		207 CDR2		216							
	ATC	TGG	ATC	CGG	AAA	CCA	CCA	GGG	AAT	AAA	CTT	GAG	TAC	ATG	GGC	TAC	ATA	AGT
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	I	W	I	R	K	P	P	G	N	K	L	E	Y	M	G	Y	I	S
	225		234		243		252		261 FR3		270							
	TAC	AGT	GGT	AGC	ACT	TAC	TAC	AAT	CCA	TCT	CTC	AAG	AGT	CGA	ATC	TCC	ATC	TCT
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	Y	S	G	S	T	Y	Y	N	P	S	L	K	S	R	I	S	I	S
	279		288		297		306		315		324							
	CGC	GAC	ACA	TCC	AAG	AAC	CAG	TTC	TCT	CTA	AAG	TTG	TCT	TCT	GTG	ACT	GCC	GCC
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	R	D	T	S	K	N	Q	F	S	L	K	L	S	S	V	T	A	A
	333		342		351 CDR3		360		369		378							
	GAC	ACA	GGC	GTG	TAT	TAC	TGT	GCC	TGC	CGC	AGT	TAC	GGG	AGG	ACC	CCG	TAC	TAC
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	D	T	G	V	Y	Y	C	A	C	R	S	Y	G	R	T	P	Y	Y
	387		396		405		414		423 NheI		3'							
	TTT	GAC	TTC	TGG	GGC	CAA	GGC	ACC	ACT	CTC	ACC	GTC	TCC	TCA	GCT	AGC		
	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---		
	F	D	F	W	G	Q	G	T	T	L	T	V	S	S	A	S		

FIGURE 6

7/26

Anti-gp39 24-31 V<sub>K</sub> Sequence

5' <u>Bgl II</u>																	
AGA	TCT	CTC	ACC	ATG	GGC	TTC	AAG	ATG	GAG	TCA	CAG	TTT	CTG	GCC	TTT	GTA	TTC
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
			M	G	F	K	M	E	S	Q	F	L	A	F	V	F	
GCG	TTT	CTC	TGG	TTG	TCT	GGT	GTT	GAT	GGA	+1	90	FRI	99			108	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
A	F	L	W	L	S	G	V	D	G	D	I	V	M	T	Q	S	Q
AAA	TTC	ATG	TCC	ACA	TCC	GTA	GGA	GAC	AGG	GTC	AGC	ATC	ACC	TGC	CDR1	162	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
K	F	M	S	T	S	V	G	D	R	V	S	I	T	C	K	A	S
CAG	AAT	GTG	ATT	ACT	GCT	GTA	GCC	TGG	TAT	CAA	CAG	AAA	CCA	GGA	CAA	TCT	216
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
Q	N	V	I	T	A	V	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	P	G	Q	S	P
AAA	TTG	CTG	ATT	TAC	TCG	GCA	TCC	AAT	CGG	TAC	ACT	FR3	261			270	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
K	L	L	I	Y	S	A	S	N	R	Y	T	G	V	P	D	R	F
TCA	GGC	AGT	GGG	TCT	GGG	ACA	GAT	TTC	ACT	CTC	ACC	ATC	AGC	AAT	ATG	CAG	324
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	S	N	M	Q	S
GAA	GAC	CTG	GCA	GAT	TAT	TTC	TGC	351	CDR3	360		369				378	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
E	D	L	A	D	Y	F	C	Q	Q	Y	N	S	Y	P	Y	T	F
FR4	387				396			405	Bsi WI								
GGG	GGG	ACC	AAG	CTG	GAA	ATC	AAA	CGT	ACG	3'							
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---							
G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	R	T							

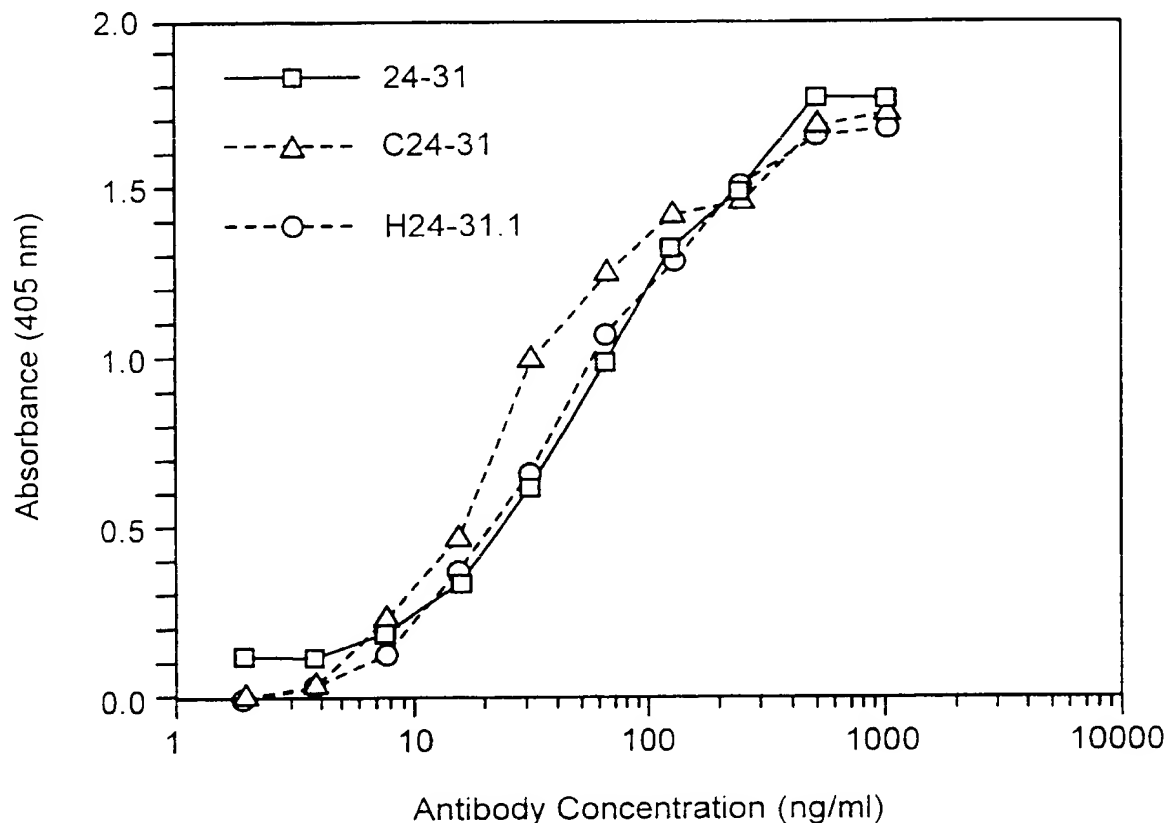
FIGURE 7

8/26

Anti gp39 24-31 V<sub>H</sub> Sequence

SaliI																			
5'	GTC	GAC	ATG	ATG	GTG	TTA	AGT	CTT	CTG	TAC	CTG	TTG	ACA	GCC	CTT	CCG	GGT	TTC	
			M	M	V	L	S	L	L	Y	L	L	T	A	L	P	G	F	
			+1																
			63		FRI	72			81			90			99			108	
	CTG	TCA	GAG	GTG	CAG	CTT	CAG	GAG	TCA	GGA	CCT	AGC	CTC	GTG	AAA	CCT	TCT	CAG	
	L	S	E	V	Q	L	Q	E	S	G	P	S	L	V	K	P	S	Q	
			117			126			135			144			153	CDR1		162	
	ACT	CTG	TCC	CTC	ACC	TGT	TCT	GTC	ACT	GGC	GAC	TCC	ATC	ACT	AAT	GGT	TTC	TGG	
	T	L	S	L	T	C	S	V	T	G	D	S	I	T	N	G	F	W	
			171	FR2		180			189			198			207	CDR2		216	
	ATC	TGG	ATC	CGG	AAA	TTC	CCA	GGG	AAT	AAA	CTT	GAG	TAC	ATG	GGC	TAC	ATA	AGT	
	I	W	I	R	K	F	P	G	N	K	L	E	Y	M	G	Y	I	S	
			225			234			243			252			261	FR3		270	
	TAC	AGT	GGT	AGC	ACT	TAC	TAC	AAT	CCA	TCT	CTC	AAG	AGT	CGA	ATC	TCC	ATC	ACT	
	Y	S	G	S	T	Y	Y	N	P	S	L	K	S	R	I	S	I	T	
			279			288			297			306			315			324	
	CGC	GAC	ACA	TCC	CAG	AAC	CAG	TTC	TAC	CTA	CAA	TTG	AAT	TCT	GTG	ACT	ACT	GAG	
	R	D	T	S	Q	N	Q	F	Y	L	Q	L	N	S	V	T	T	E	
			333			342			351	CDR3		360			369			378	
	GAC	ACA	GGC	ACA	TAT	TAC	TGT	GCC	TGC	CGC	AGT	TAC	GGG	AGG	ACC	CCG	TAC	TAC	
	D	T	G	T	Y	Y	C	A	C	R	S	Y	G	R	T	P	Y	Y	
			387	FR4		396			405			414			423	NheI			
	TTT	GAC	TTC	TGG	GGC	CAA	GGC	ACC	ACT	CTC	ACC	GTC	TCC	TCA	GCT	AGC	3'		
	F	D	F	W	G	Q	G	T	T	L	T	V	S	S	A	S			

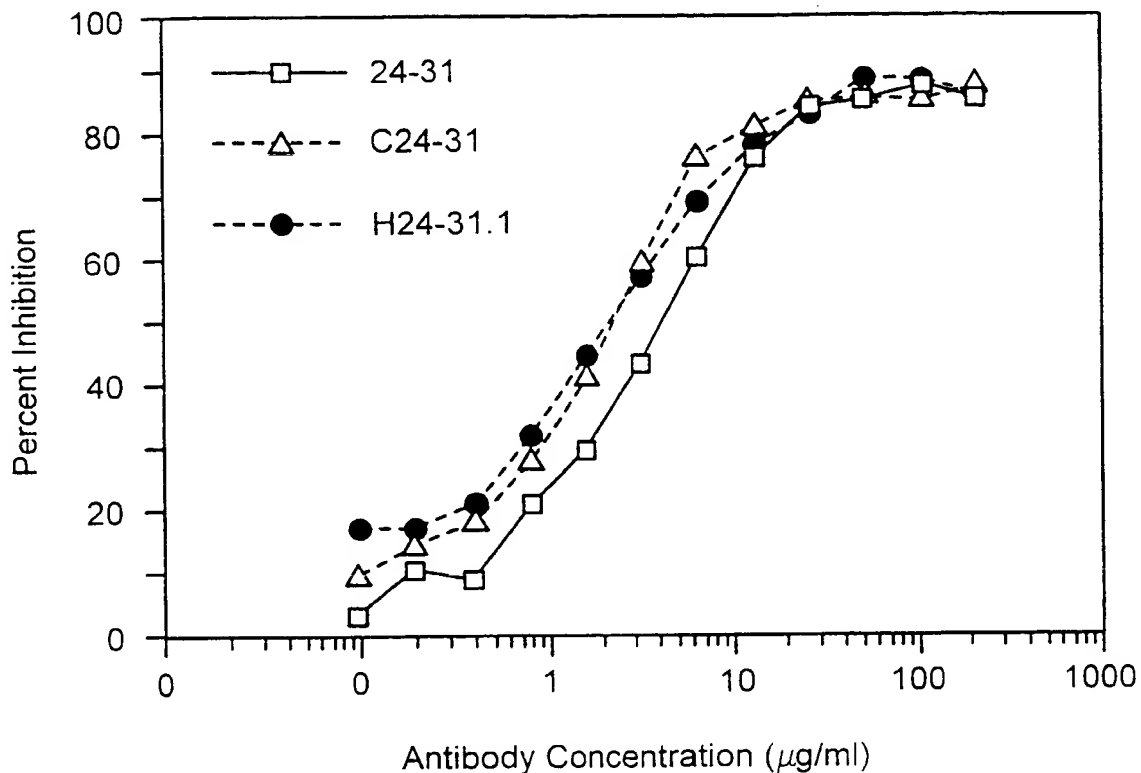
FIGURE 8

**FIG. 9****Direct Binding of Anti-gp39 Antibodies to mgp39 CHO Cells**

Fifty  $\mu$ l of 1  $\mu$ g/ml solution of each anti-gp39 antibody (murine, chimeric and humanized version 1 of 24-31) was added to wells containing poly-L-lysine fixed mgp39 CHO cells. After a 2 hour incubation, the bound antibodies were detected with either goat anti-human IgG HRP or goat anti-mouse IgG HRP. The binding capacity of each antibody was compared on a plot of absorbance vs antibody concentration.

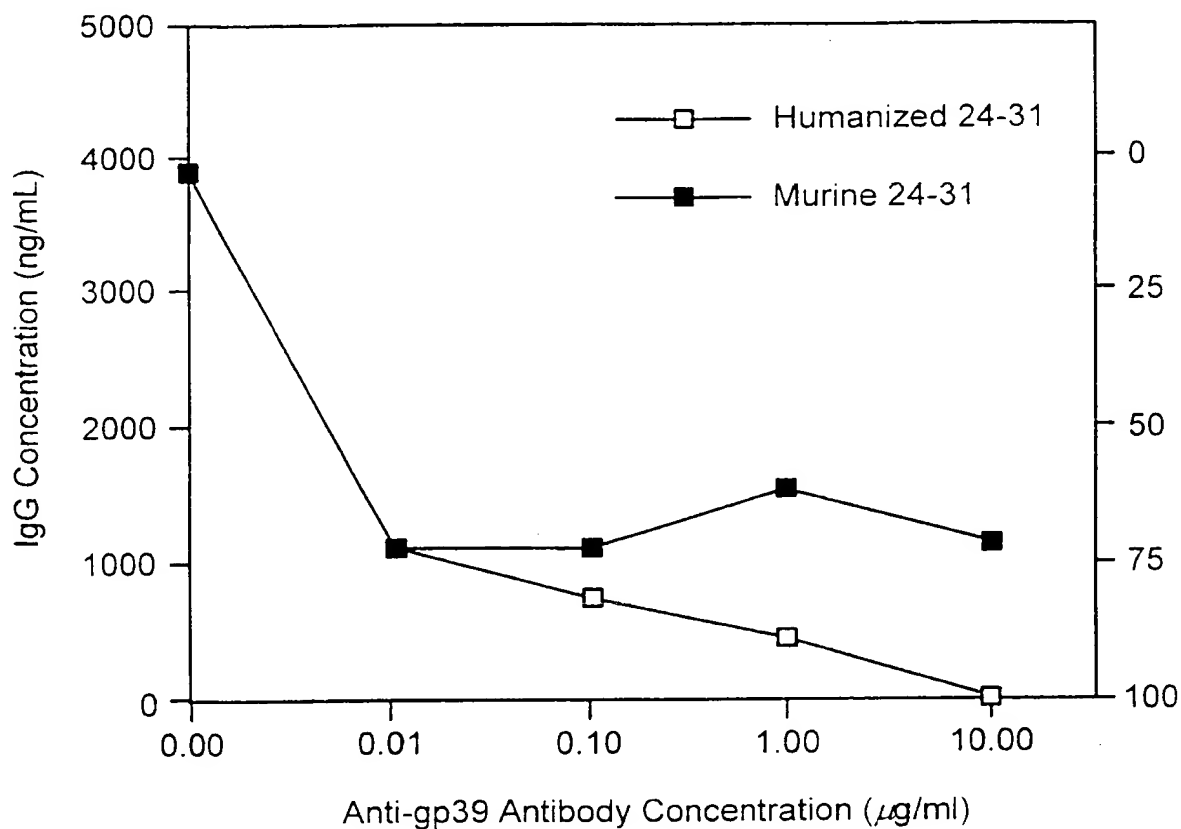
The figure shows that the half maximal binding in ELISA is achieved at similar concentrations for all three versions, at approximately 40 ng/ml.

10/26

**FIG. 10****Competition Binding of 200 ng/ml Mouse Anti-gp39 Biotin  
with Anti-gp39 Antibodies on mgp39 CHO Cells**

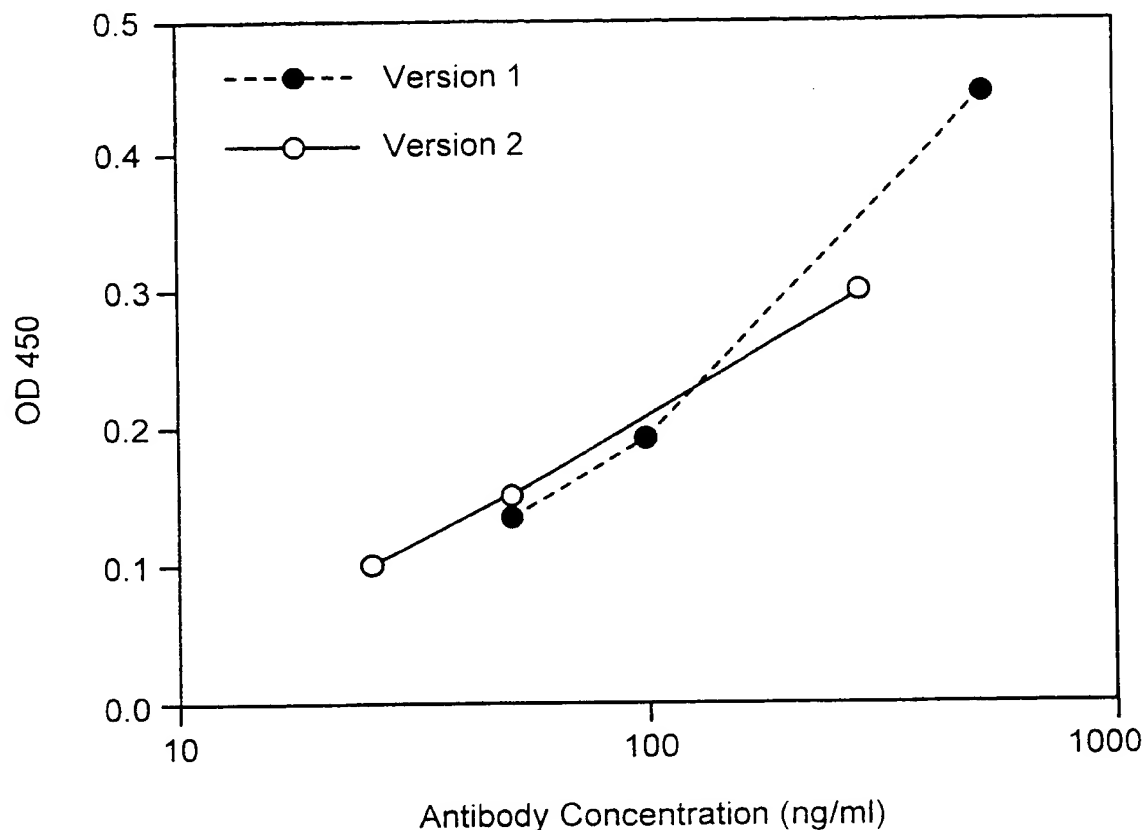
The figure shows that competition for binding to gp39 between biotin labeled 24-31 and the mouse, chimeric and humanized versions 1 are comparable, possibly with the humanized version slightly better than the original antibody, with half-maximal competition at 2 and 4  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ , respectively.

11 / 26

**FIG. 11**

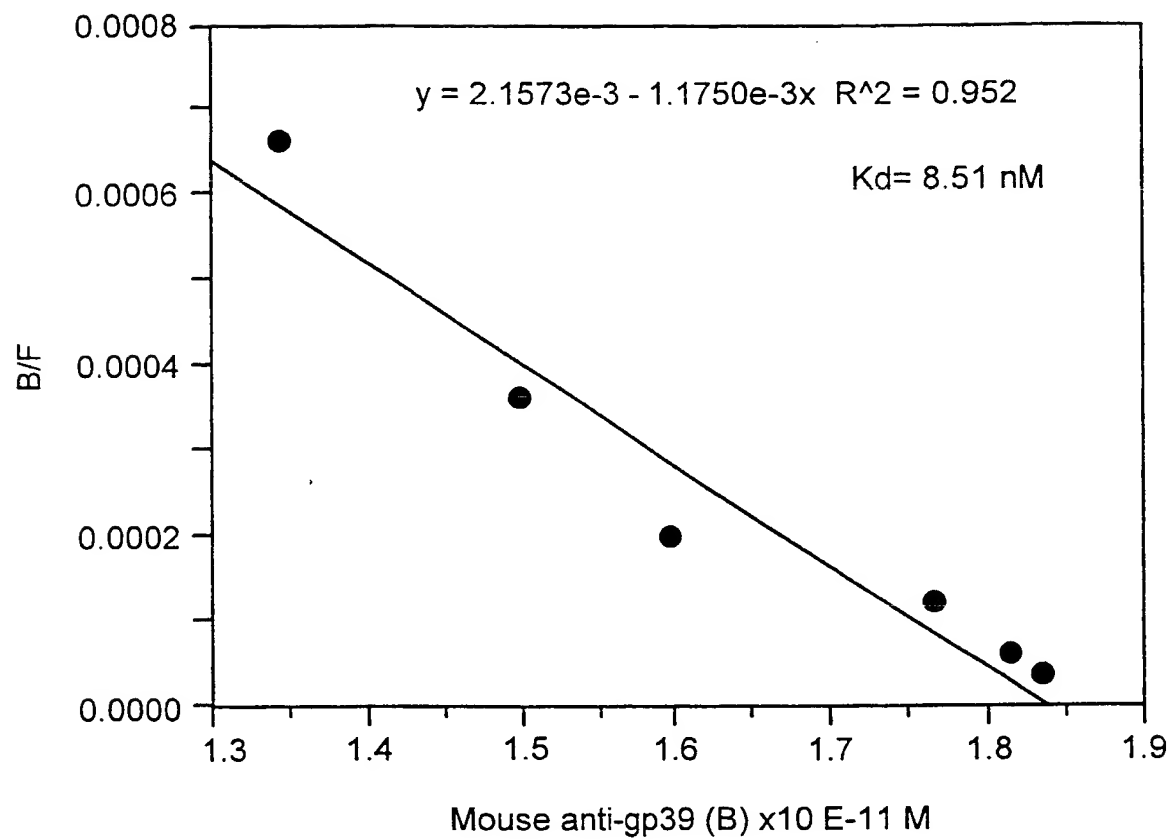
Purified, mitomycin C treated T cells were added into cell culture plates coated with anti-CD3 antibody. Autologous purified B cells were mixed with antibody at described concentrations and added to these plates in regular growth media. After 10 days the supernatant was tested for content of human IgM.

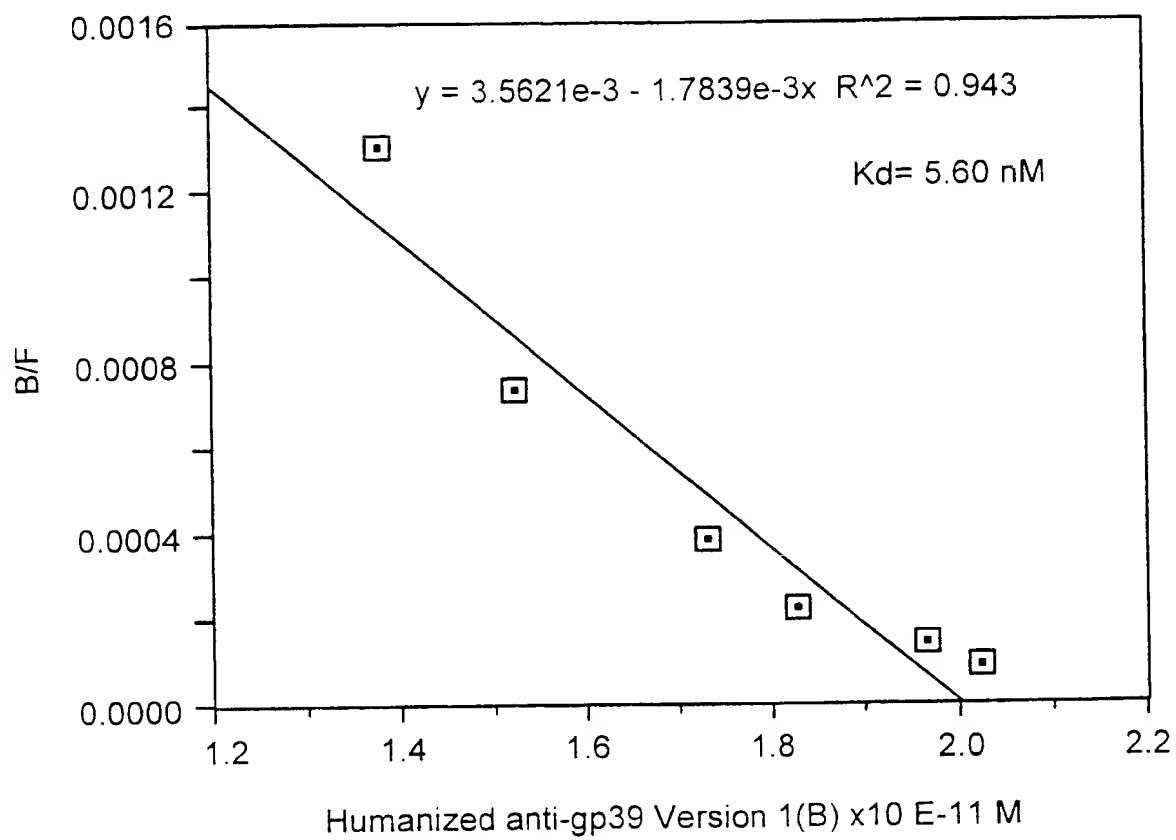
12/26

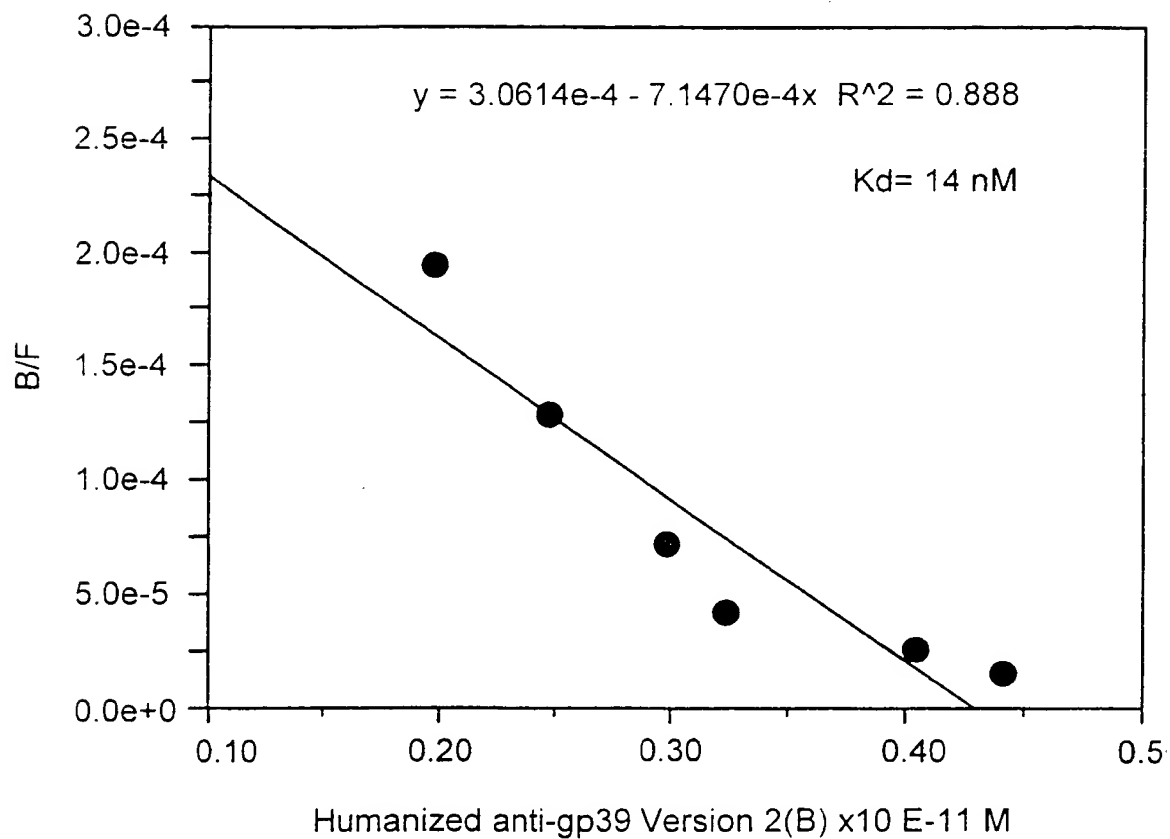
**FIG. 12**

CHO cell supernatant containing humanized 24-31 version 1 and version 2 in unknown amounts, was incubated on mgp39-CHO cells for 2 hours. After a wash, the amount of bound antibody was determined. The same supernatants were tested in parallel on an ELISA plate coated with Goat v Human P<sub>1</sub> to determine the concentration of human IgG present relative to a control of known concentration. The binding data were normalized relative to the total antibody concentration.

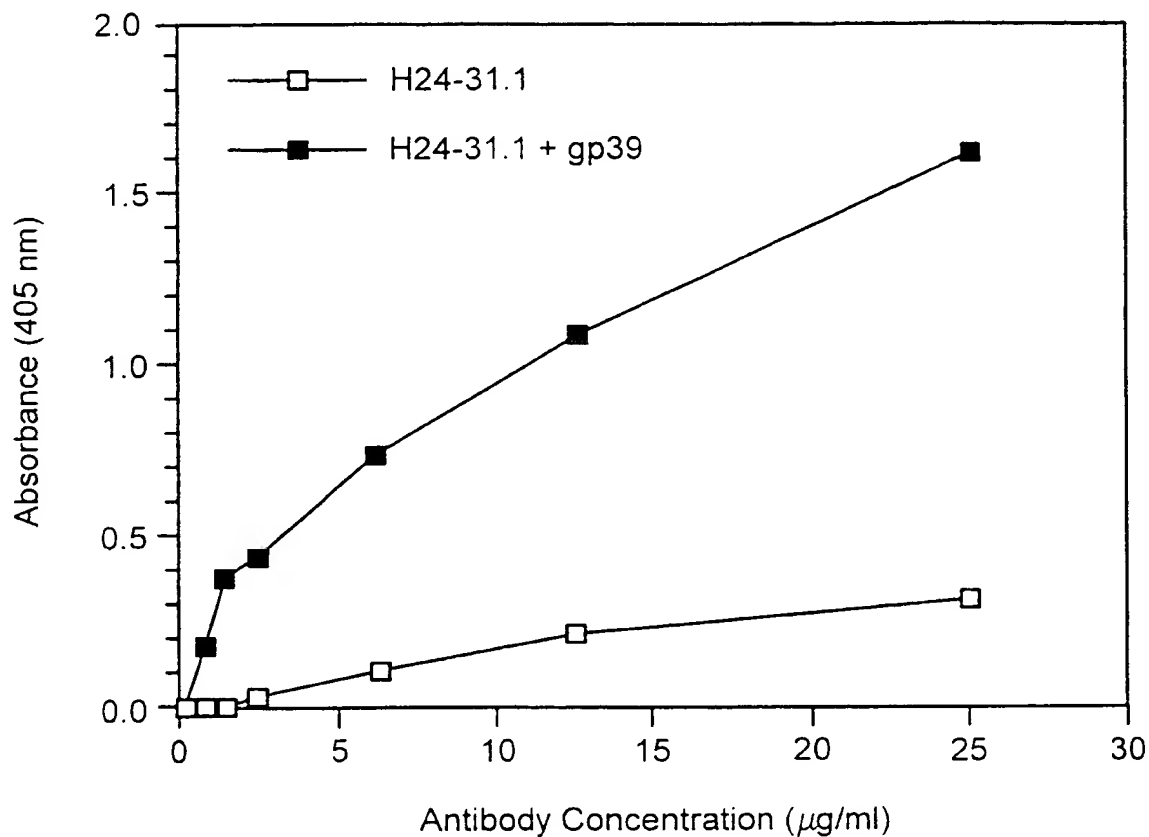


**FIG. 13****Scatchard Analysis**

**FIG. 14****Scatchard Analysis**

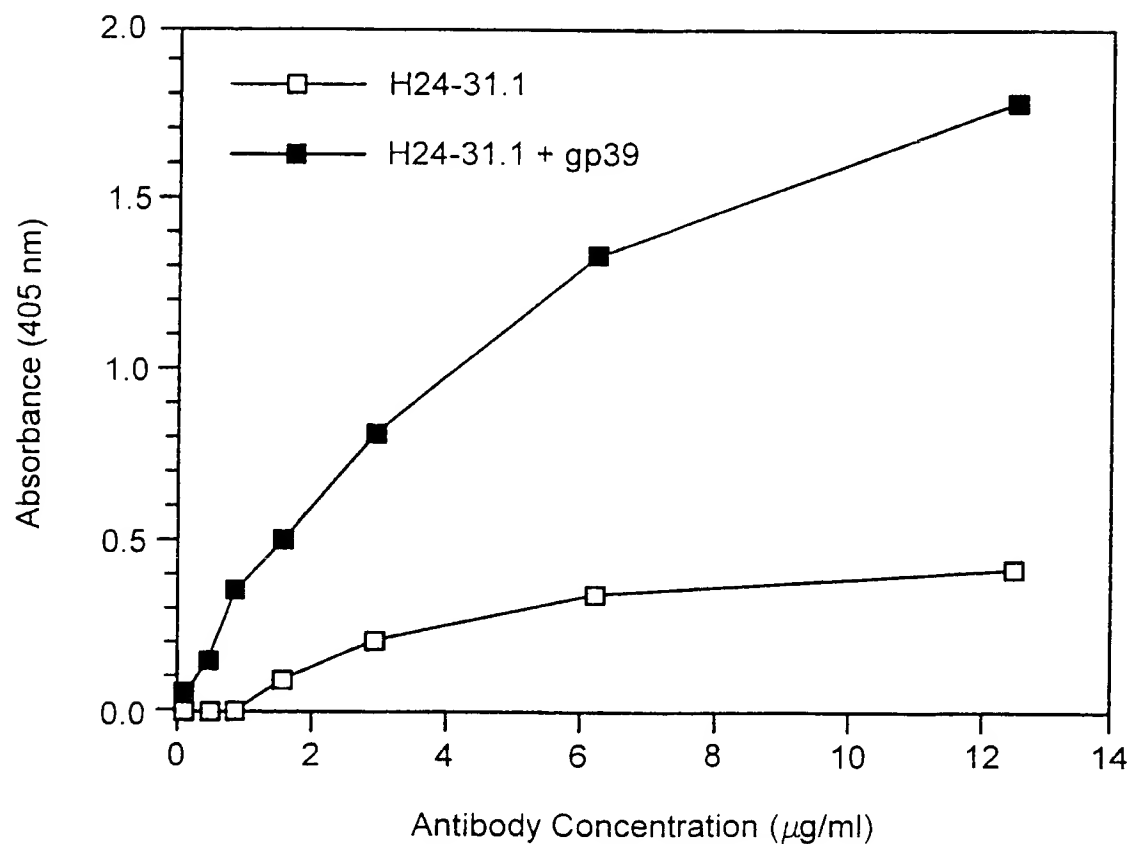
**FIG. 15****Scatchard Analysis**

16/26

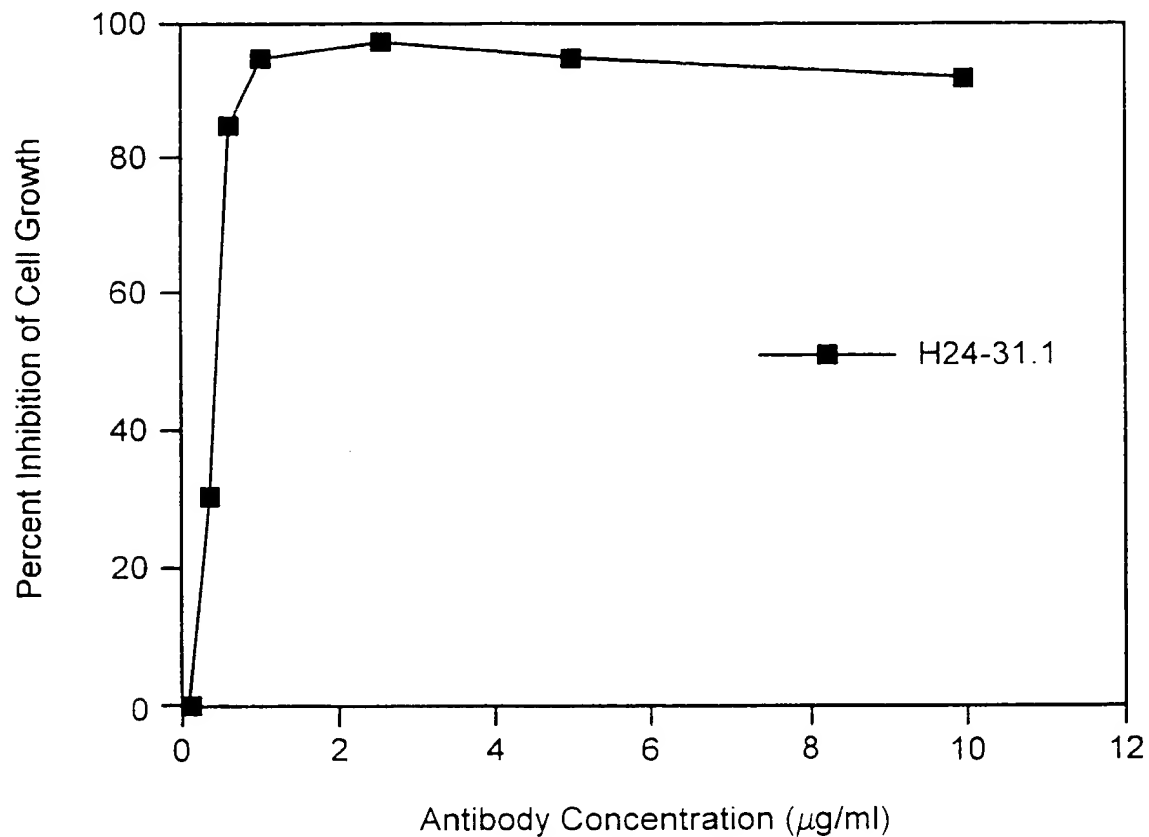
**FIG. 16****FcRI Binding of H24-31.1 in the Presence  
of gp39-CD8 Fusion Protein**

The figure shows that H24-31.1 only binds Fc receptor I when complexed to antigen.

17/26

**FIG. 17****FcRII Binding of H24-31.1 in the Presence  
of gp39-CD8 Fusion Protein**

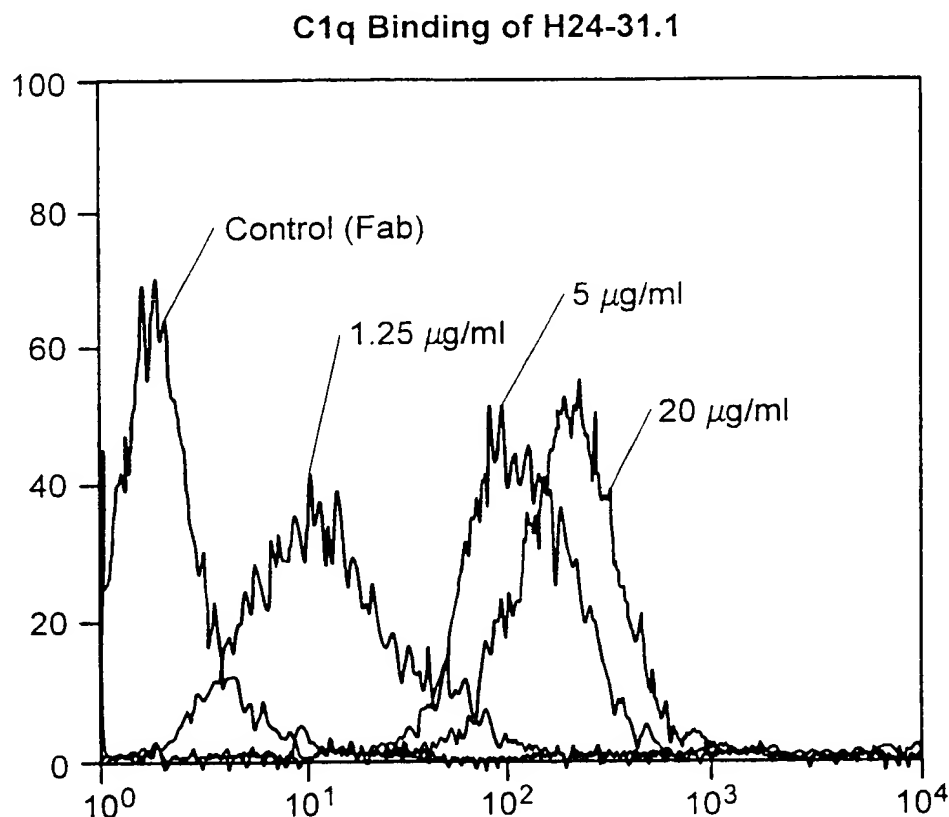
The figure shows that H24-31.1 only binds Fc receptor II when complexed to antigen.

**FIG. 18****Complement Dependent Cellular Cytotoxicity  
using Alamar Blue**

The figure shows that H24-31.1 inhibits 50% of cell growth at approximately 0.5 μg/ml.

19/26  
**FIG. 19****Determination of C1q binding of gp39+CHO bound H24-31.1  
(Humanized 24-31 version 1)**

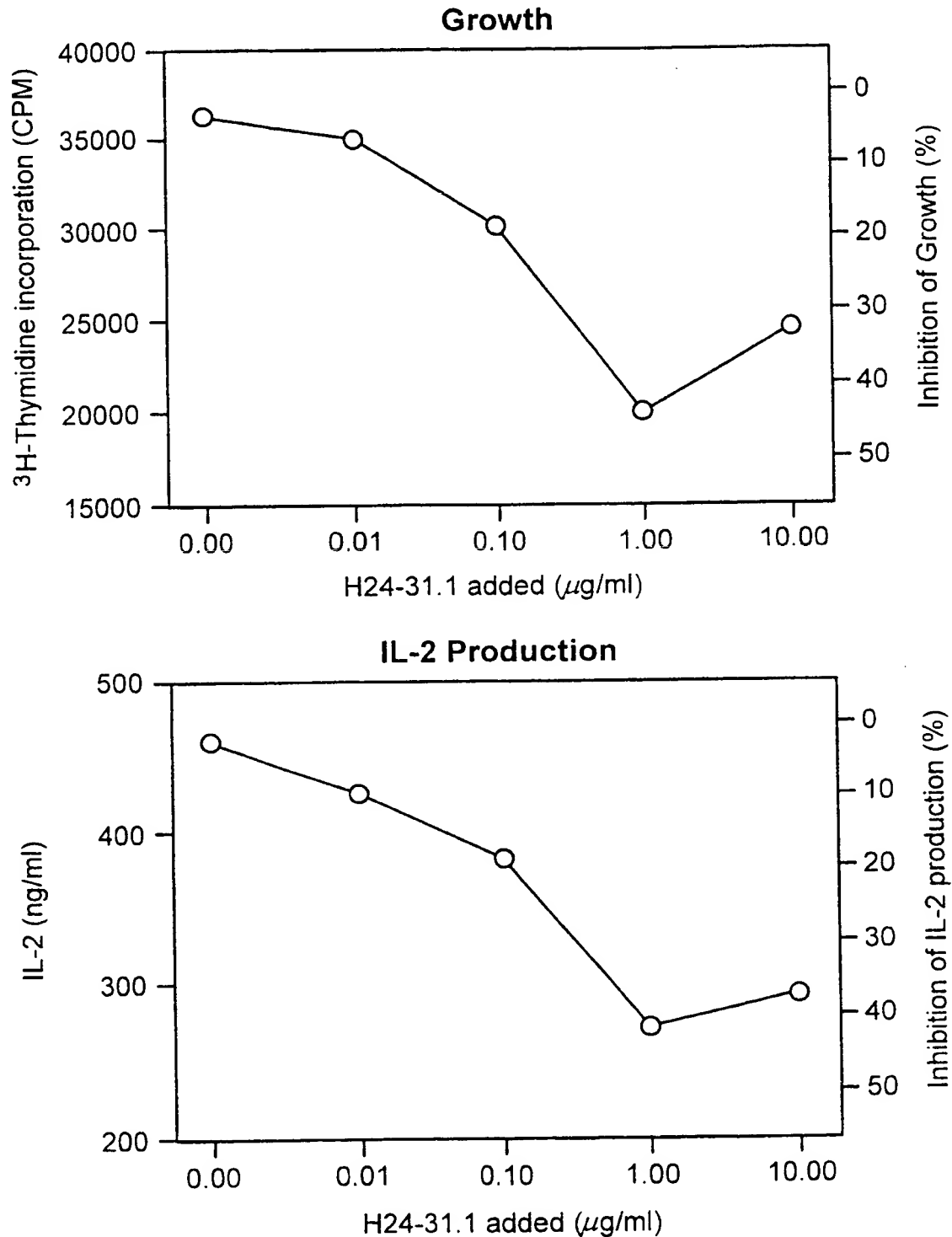
gp39+CHO cells labeled with various concentrations of H24-31.1 were incubated in an excess amount of human C1q (complement factor 1) and subsequently incubated with FITC labeled goat anti-human C1q. The samples were analyzed by flow cytometry to determine the relative labeling of the cells with C1q.



The figure shows that labeling of the cells with C1q was dependent on the antibody concentration, and that an H24-31.1 Fab fragment (no C1q binding) did not bind C1q.

**FIG. 20**

Effect of H24-31.1 on T cell responses to a T cell dependent recall antigen.



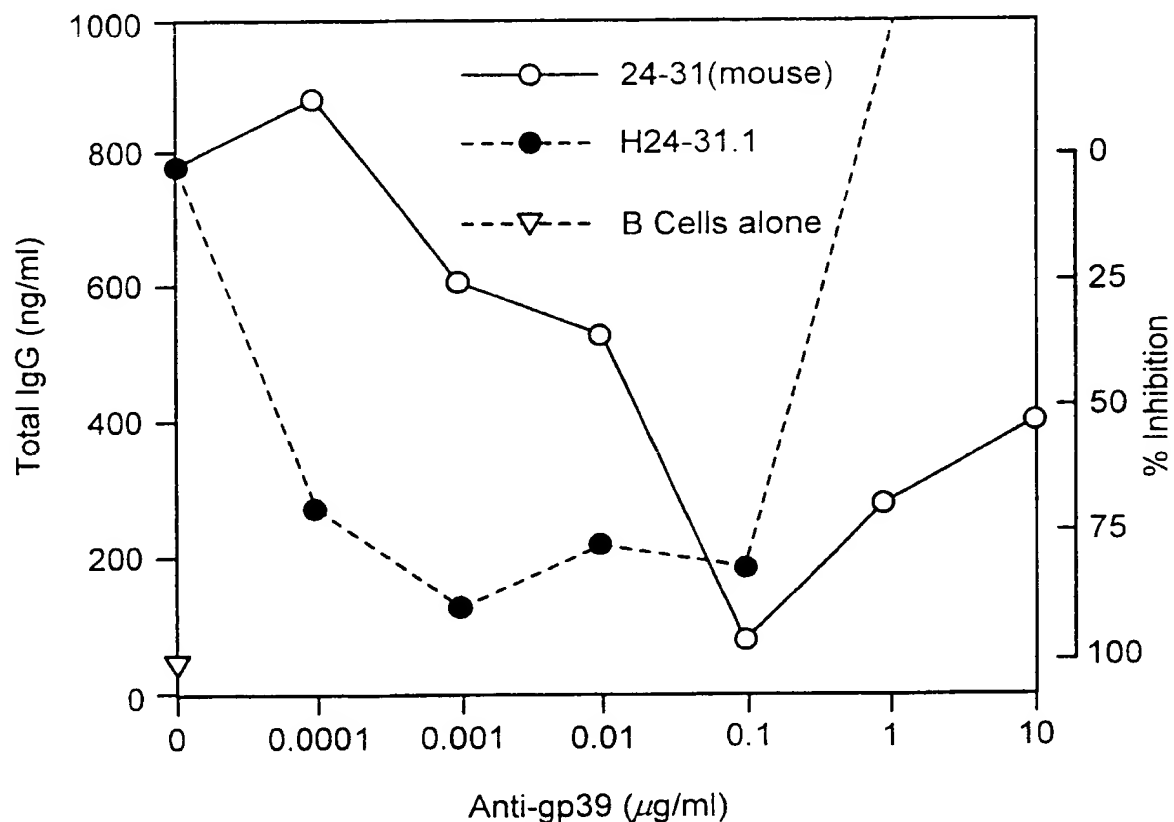
The figure shows that TT induced growth and IL-2 production was inhibited maximally, around 40%, by  $\geq 1\mu\text{g/ml}$  H24-31.1.



**FIG. 21**

Effect of H24-31.1 on T cell dependent B cell differentiation.

**Inhibition of T Cell Dependent IgG Production by  
Anti-gp39 Antibodies**

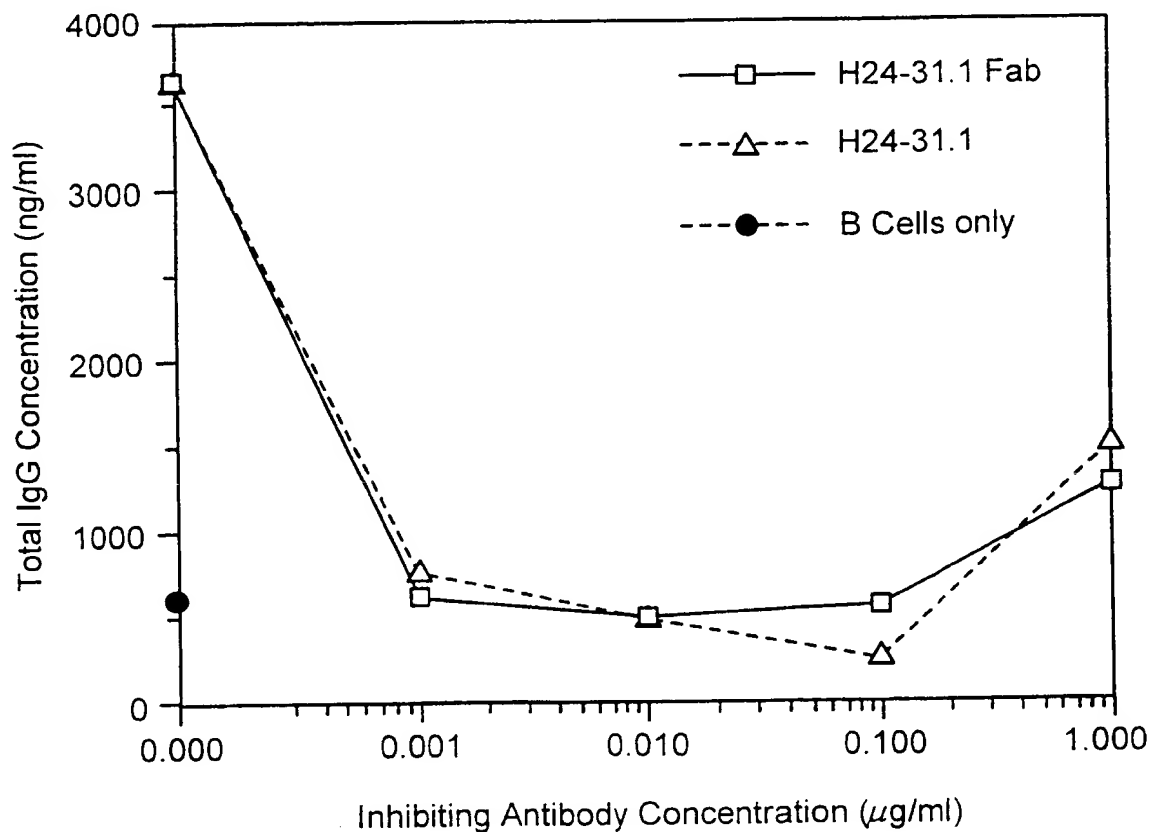


The figure shows that H24-31.1 inhibits T cell dependent IgG production approximately 85% at 1 ng/ml. The apparent increase in IgG production seen at higher concentrations is due to the inability of this test to distinguish H24-31.1 from antibody produced by the B cells.

**FIG. 22**

Effect of H24-31.1 Fab on T cell dependent B cell differentiation.

**Anti-gp39 Antibody Inhibition of T Cell Dependent  
B Cell IgG Production**



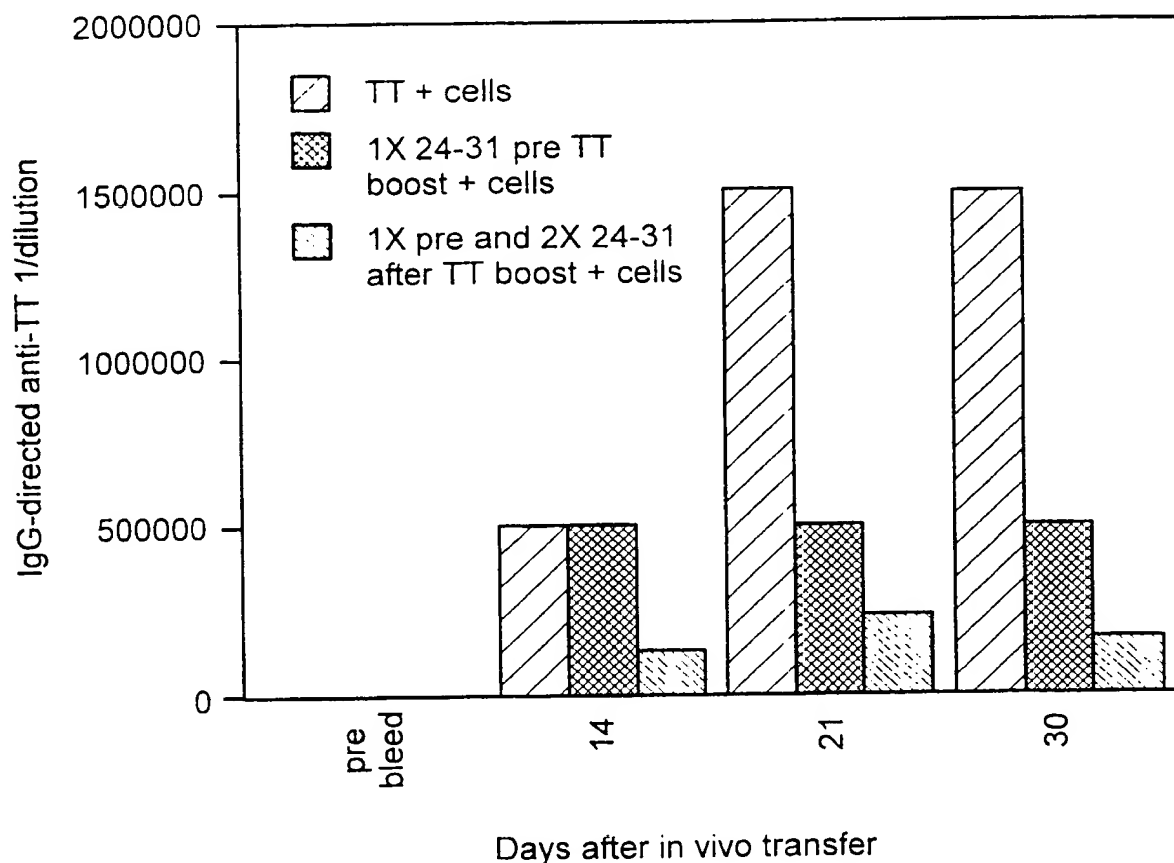
The figure shows there was no difference in the inhibition of IgG production between the whole H24-31.1 antibody and the Fab fragment.

## FIG. 23

Effect of H24-31.1 on generation of antigen specific B cells responses to a T cell dependent recall antigen.

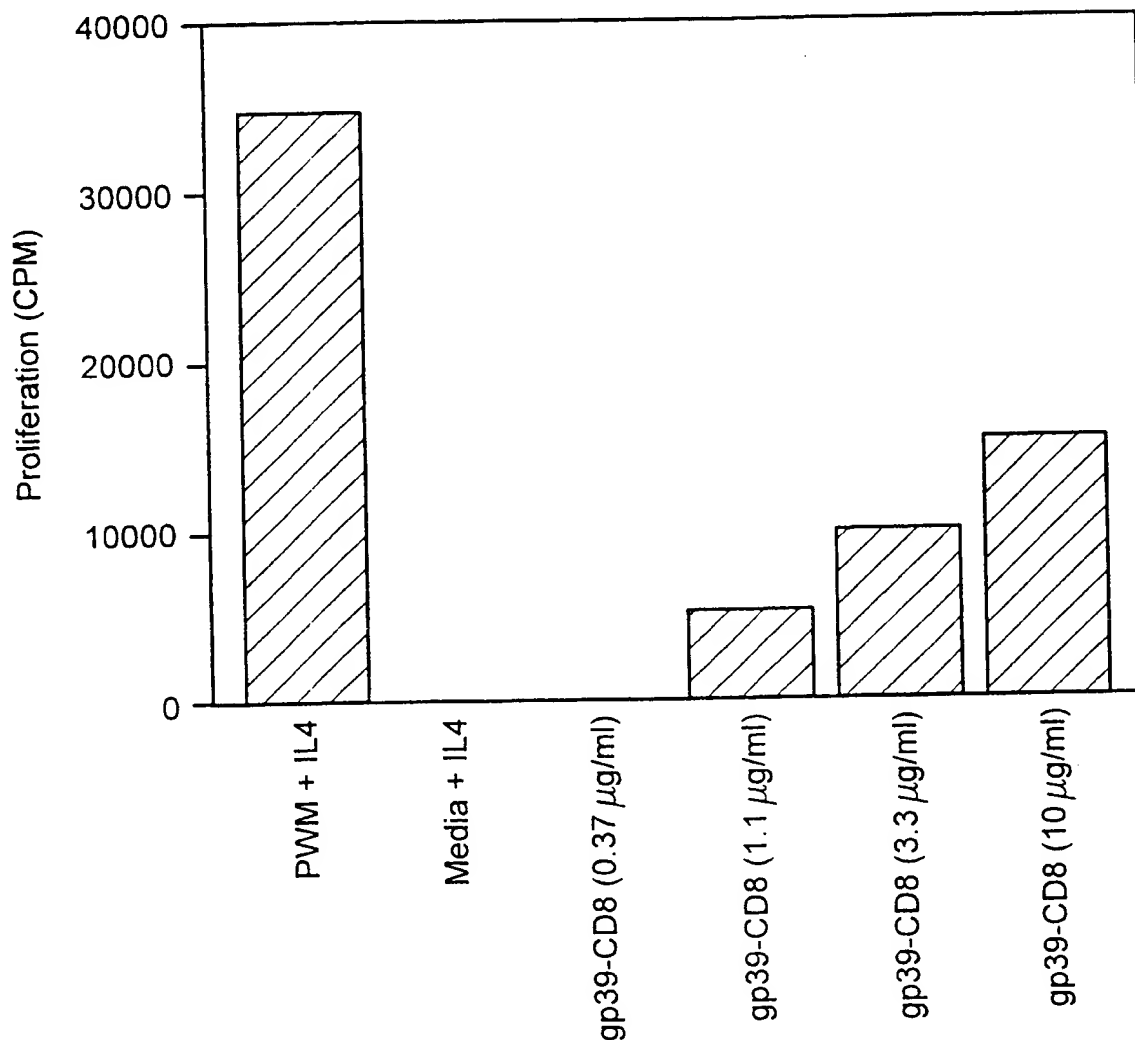
Human spleen cells primed with tetanus toxoid for 3 days in vitro, were transferred to SCID mice at a concentration of approximately  $1 \times 10^7$  cells/SCID. After 6 six days the resulting hu-SPL-SCID mice were injected with PBS (group 1) or with 300  $\mu$ g H24-31.1 (groups 1 and 2). The following day the Hu-SPL-SCIDs were all boosted with tetanus toxoid. The mice in group 3 received 2 further injections of 300  $\mu$ g H24-31.1 each with 3 days interval. The mice were bled at various timepoints and the levels of human IgG anti-tetanus toxoid titers determined by ELISA.

Anti-TT titer in 24-31-Hu-SPL-SCID

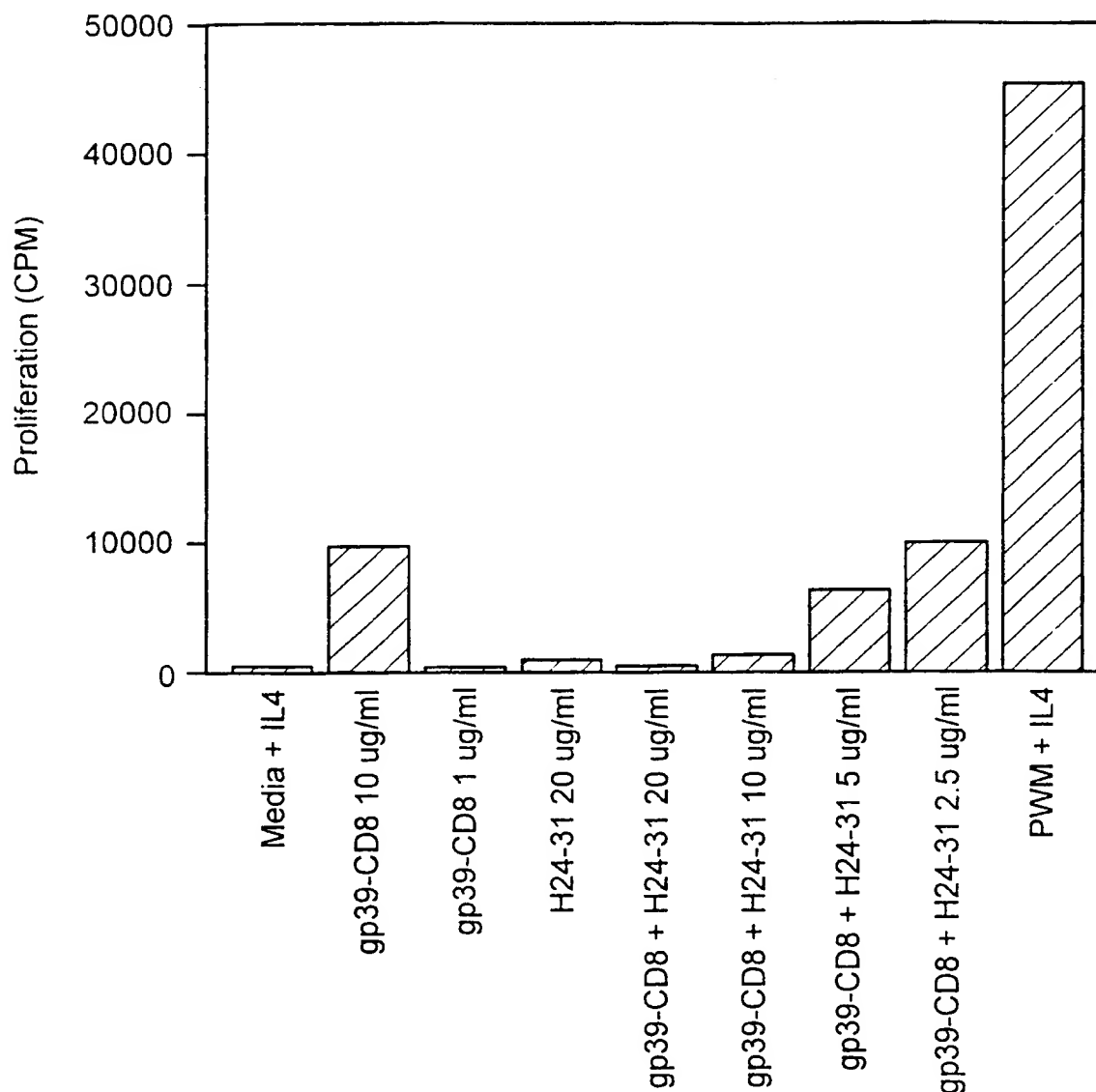


The figure shows that injection of H24-31.1 inhibited generation of tetanus toxoid specific responses by approximately 90% (group 3). Levels of total human IgG was comparable between the three groups.

24 / 26

**FIG. 24****Proliferation of Human B Cells by Soluble gp39-CD8**

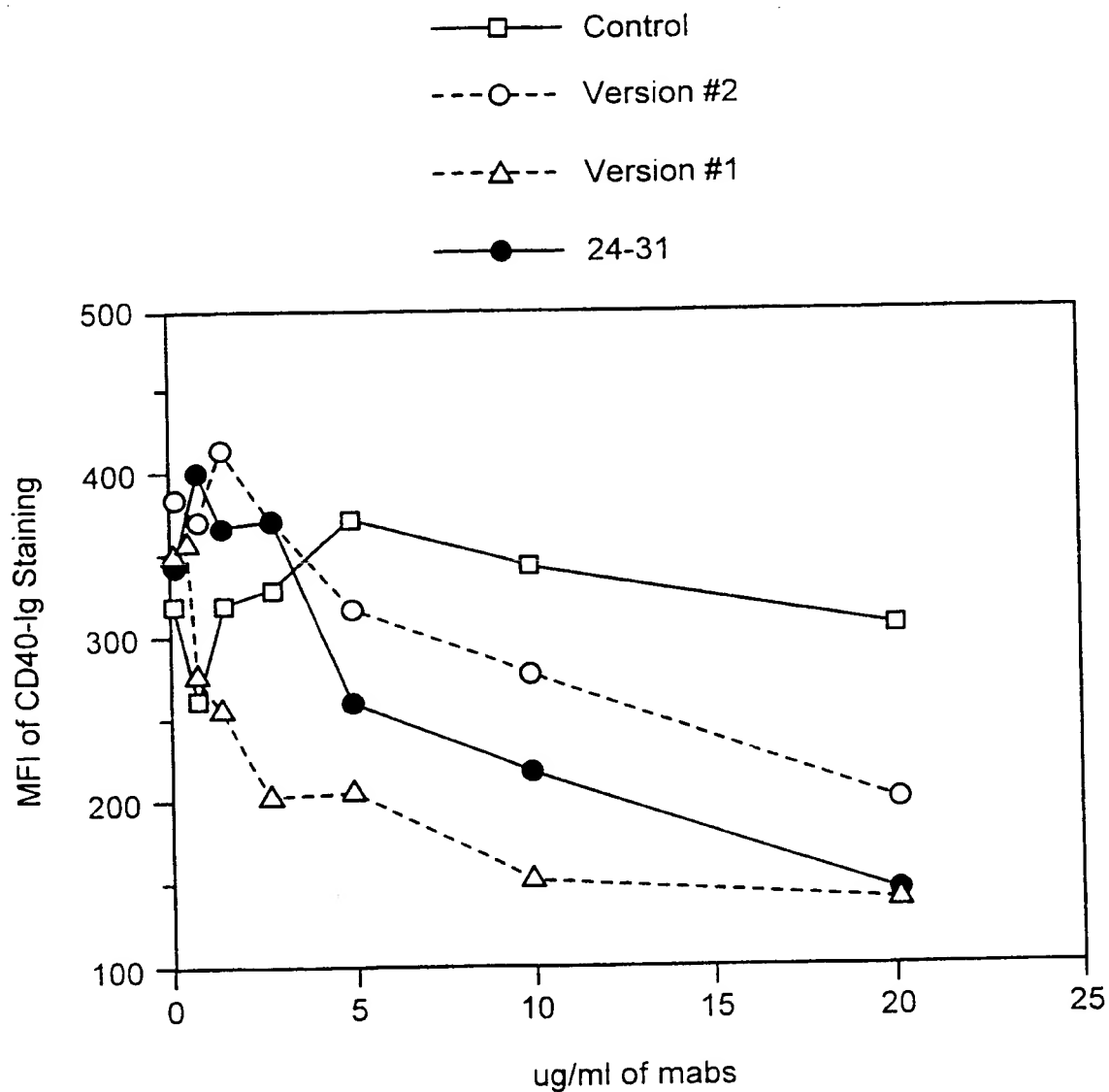
Different concentrations of CD8-gp39 were incubated with enriched human B cell plus IL-4, in a 4 day proliferation assay. The CPM obtained in B cells plus IL-4 cultures without gp39-CD8 was used as the background and subtracted from the total CPM of test culture stimulated with gp39-CD8. Cells cultured with PWM plus IL-4 served as positive control for B cell proliferation. CPM represents the mean CPM of samples tested in triplicates.

**FIG. 25****Inhibition of B-Cell Proliferation by H24-31**

Different concentrations of H24-31.1 antibody were incubated with B cells ( $1 \times 10^5$ ) cultured with IL-4 (1000 U/ml) and 10  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  of gp39-CD8 in a 4 day proliferation assay. Cells cultured with PWM plus IL-4 served as positive control for B cell proliferation. CPM represents the mean CPM of samples tested in triplicates.

**FIG. 26**

Blocking of CD40-Ig binding to gp39  
by humanized versions of 24-31.



This figure illustrates that the murine and humanized versions of 24-31 block binding of CD40-Ig.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US98/18163

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) : Please See Extra Sheet.

US CL : Please See Extra Sheet.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : Please See Extra Sheet.

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched  
NONE

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS, DIALOG, BIOSIS, CA, EMBASE, MEDLINE, WPI

search terms: gp39, CD40L, cd40 ligand, 24(w)31, autoimmun?, transplant?, graft?

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	US 5,474,771 A (LEDERMAN ET AL.) 12 December 1995, see entire document.	1-6, 10-16, 25-29
X	WO 94/04570 A1 (SCHERING CORPORATION) 03 March 1994, see entire document.	1-6, 10-16, 25-29
X	WO 95/06666 A1 (TRUSTEES OF DARMOUTH COLLEGE) 09 March 1995, see entire document.	1-34

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	*T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
*A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	*X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
*B* earlier document published on or after the international filing date	*Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
*L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	*g* document member of the same patent family
*O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	
*P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	

Date of the actual completion of the international search 18 NOVEMBER 1998	Date of mailing of the international search report 22 DEC 1998
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Box PCT Washington, D.C. 20231 Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230	Authorized officer <i>PHILLIP GAMBEL</i> Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet)(July 1992)\*

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US98/18163

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER: IPC (6):

A61K 39.395; C07H 21/04; C07K 16/00, 16/18, 16/28; C12N 5/10, 15/13; C12P 21/08

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER: US CL :

424/1301., 133.1, 141.1, 143.1, 144.1, 152.1, 154.1, 173.,1; 435/451. 452, 326, 328, 332, 334, 343, 343 .1, 343.2;  
530/387.1, 387.3, 388.1, 388.2, 388.33, 388.7, 388.75; 536/23.1, 23.4, 23.5, 23.53

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED Minimum documentation searched Classification System: U.S.

424/1301., 133.1, 141.1, 143.1, 144.1, 152.1, 154.1, 173.,1; 435/451. 452, 326, 328, 332, 334, 343, 343 .1, 343.2;  
530/387.1, 387.3, 388.1, 388.2, 388.33, 388.7, 388.75; 536/23.1, 23.4, 23.5, 23.53